## 6)

## Babani Electronics Books

## Electronic Hobbyists Data Book

Audio and acuystics

Circaits and projedts
Data and reference


Wosic and ialti

Test -quipment

## Si月 ralig and comantalsationt

R. A. Penfold

## ELECTRONIC HOBBYISTS DATA BOOK

## Other Titles of Interest

160 Coil Design and Construction ManualBP53 Practical Electronics Calculations and FormulaeBP144 Further Practical Electronics Calculations andFormulae
BP286 A Reference Guide to Basic Electronics Terms
BP287 A Reference Guide to Practical Electronics Terms
BP316 Practical Electronic Design Data
BP401 Transistor Data Tables

# ELECTRONIC HOBBYISTS DATA BOOK 

by<br>R. A. Penfold

## BERNARD BABANI (publishing) LTD THE GRAMPIANS SHEPHERDS BUSH ROAD LONDON W6 7NF <br> ENGLAND

## Please Note

Although every care has been taken with the production of this book to ensure that any projects, designs, modifications and/or programs, etc., contained herewith, operate in a correct and safe manner and also that any components specified are normally available in Great Britain, the Publishers do not accept responsibility in any way for the failure, including fault in design, of any project, design, modification or program to work correctly or to cause damage to any other equipment that it may be connected to or used in conjunction with, or in respect of any other damage or injury that may be so caused, nor do the Publishers accept responsibility in any way for the failure to obtain specified components.

Notice is also given that if equipment that is still under warranty is modified in any way or used or connected with home-built equipment then that warranty may be void.
© 1996 BERNARD BABANI (publishing) LTD
First Published - March 1996

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data
Penfold, R. A.
Electronic Hobbyists Data Book
I. Title
537.5

ISBN 0859343960

Printed and bound in Great Britain by Cox \& Wyman Lid, Reading

## Preface

The hobby of electronics can be a bewildering one at times. There seems to be an ever increasing range of electronic components and circuit configurations for them to operate in. A mass of data is associated with these components and circuits, ranging from the mundane such as resistor colour codes, to more specialised data such as performance figures for specialist integrated circuits. Most electronics hobbyists accumulate a large amount of data from sources such as books, magazines, and electronic component catalogues. This brings the problem of locating each piece of data that is required, if it is actually present in the collection.

The aim of this book is to provide a large collection of data for the amateur electronics enthusiast, so that much of the information he or she will require is available in a single source where it can be quickly and easily located. It would obviously be unrealistic to claim that this book contains all the data that will ever be required by the average electronics enthusiast. However, it contains a wide range of data covering subjects such as common circuits, MIDI, computing, radio, colour codes, logic integrated circuits, operational amplifiers, transistors, and other types of semiconductor. The aim of the book is not to provide a course in electronics, and some background knowledge of the subject is needed in order to fully utilize this publication. In most cases the reader is not simply presented with raw data though, and most of the data is backed up by explanatory notes.

R. A. Penfold

Page
Chapter 1 - CIRCUIT DATA ..... 1
L-C Tuned Circuits ..... 1
Meter Resistors ..... 4
Digital Meters ..... 6
L.E.D. Current ..... 8
555 Monostable ..... 9
CMOS Monostables ..... 14
555 Astable ..... 19
Wien Oscillator ..... 23
Basic C - R Filters ..... 27
Twin T Filter ..... 30
Bandpass Filter ..... 35
State Variable Filter ..... 36
Power Supplies ..... 37
Rectifiers ..... 43
Smoothing Capacitor ..... 46
Voltage Regulators ..... 48
Variable Voltage ..... 51
Zeners ..... 53
Current Regulators ..... 58
Chapter 2 - CODES, ETC. ..... 63
Resistor Codes ..... 63
Five Band Codes ..... 65
Old Codes ..... 68
Potentiometers ..... 70
Inductors ..... 70
Capacitors ..... 70
Tantalum Bead ..... 72
Ceramic Capacitors ..... 73
Other Codes ..... 73
Preferred Values ..... 75
Chapter 3 - OPERATIONALAMPLIFIERS ..... 77
Inverting Mode ..... 77
Gain-Bandwidth ..... 79
Non-Inverting Mode ..... 81
Compensation ..... 83
Offset Null ..... 86
Chapter 3 (Continued ..... Page
Audio Amplification ..... 88
Terminology ..... 90
Offset Voltage ..... 90
Slew Rate ..... 90
Large Signal Bandwidth ..... 91
Common Mode Rejection ..... 91
Latch-Up ..... 91
Output Voltage Swing ..... 92
Output Resistance ..... 92
Real Devices ..... 92
Pseudo Op. Amps ..... 98
Chapter 4 - LOGIC ICs ..... 101
Standard TTL ..... 102
Low Power ..... 103
LS TTL ..... 104
The Rest ..... 105
CMOS ..... 106
Micro Power ..... 107
High Speed CMOS ..... 110
Which TTL? ..... 111
CMOS ..... 122
Gates ..... 143
Inverter Truth Table ..... 143
2 Input AND Gate Truth Table ..... 145
2 Input OR Gate Truth Table ..... 145
4 Input AND Gate Truth Table ..... 145
2 Input NAND Gate Truth Table ..... 146
2 Input NOR Gate Truth Table ..... 146
4 Input NAND Gate Truth Table ..... 147
2 Input XOR Gate Truth Table ..... 148
2 Input XNOR Gate Truth Table ..... 148
3 Input XOR Gate Truth Table ..... 148
Chapter 5 - TRANSISTORS, ETC. ..... 149
Parameters ..... 150
$h_{\text {FE }}$ ..... 150
$h_{\mathrm{fe}}$ ..... 151
$V_{\text {сво }}$ ..... 151
$V_{\text {CEO }}$ ..... 151
$\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{j}}$ ..... 151
Chapter 5 (Continued) Page
$P_{\text {tot }}$ ..... 152
$V_{\text {Ebo }}$ ..... 152
Ic ..... 153
$\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{T}}$ ..... 153
Iсво ..... 154
$\mathrm{V}_{\text {CE(sal) }}$ ..... 154
ton ..... 154
toff ..... 155
Amplifying Modes ..... 155
Common Base ..... 157
Emitter Follower ..... 158
Darlington Pair ..... 160
Type Numbers ..... 161
Gain Groups ..... 162
JEDEC Codes ..... 163
JIS Codes ..... 164
Manufacturers Digits ..... 165
Tables ..... 166
Transistor Characteristic Tables:
Small-medium Power Audio Transistors ..... 166
Small-medium Power R.F. Transistors ..... 168
Power Transistors ..... 169
FETs ..... 170
FET Parameters ..... 175
$f_{T}$ ..... 175
Ртот ..... 176
$\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{p}}$ ..... 176
$V_{G G S}$ ..... 176
$V_{D G}$ ..... 176
VD ..... 176
Ciss ..... 176
gm ..... 176
$\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{GS}(\mathrm{h})}$ ..... 177
Idss ..... 177
Igss ..... 177
Id ..... 177
IDss ..... 177
ton ..... 178
toff ..... 178
RDS ..... 178
Chapter 5 (Continued) ..... Page
$V_{\text {DS(on) }}$ ..... 178
FET Characteristics ..... 179
Small Signal FETs ..... 179
Power MOSFETs ..... 179
Unijunctions ..... 180
$V_{B B}$ ..... 181
Ip ..... 182
Iv ..... 184
IE ..... 184
Ptot ..... 184
$\mathrm{R}_{\text {bb }}$ ..... 184
n ..... 184
Diodes ..... 185
Parameters ..... 186
PIV ..... 187
$\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{f}}$ ..... 187
$I_{R}$ ..... 188
$V_{\text {F Drop }}$ ..... 188
$\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{r}}$ ..... 188
T ..... 188
SCRs ..... 189
$V_{r}$ ..... 190
$V_{f}$ ..... 190
$\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{f}}$ ..... 190
$\mathrm{V}_{8}$ ..... 190
$\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{g}}$ ..... 190
I hm ..... 190
$V_{f m}$ ..... 191
Triacs and Diacs ..... 192
Chapter 6 - MISCELLANEOUS DATA ..... 195
Short Wave Bands ..... 195
Short Wave Broadcast Bands ..... 195
Short Wave Amateur Band ..... 195
CB Frequency Allocations ..... 196
Frequency-Wavelength Conversion ..... 199
Amateur Abbreviations ..... 200
Q Codes ..... 203
SINPO ..... 204
Signal Strength ..... 204
Chapter 6 (Continued)
Interference ..... 205
Noise ..... 205
Propagation Disturbance ..... 205
Overall Rating ..... 205
Baudot Codes ..... 205
Morse Code ..... 207
ASCII Codes ..... 208
MIDI Codes ..... 212
MIDI Instructions and Codes ..... 214
Note On/Off ..... 214
Key Pressure ..... 215
Control Change, Etc ..... 215
Pitch Wheel ..... 216
Programme Change ..... 216
System Messages ..... 217
General MIDI ..... 219
General MIDI Sound Assignment Groups ..... 221
Melodic Instrument Sound Assignments ..... 221
Circuit Symbols ..... 225
Centronics Interface ..... 230
RS232C ..... 234
Parallel R - Series C ..... 236
Amplifier Output Power ..... 238
Peak - R.M.S. ..... 238
Decibel Ratios ..... 239

## Chapter 1

## CIRCUIT DATA

This chapter covers basic design data for a range of common circuit types. These include 555 astable and monostable circuits, meter series and shunt resistances, series and parallel tuned circuits, etc. In addition to basic design formulae, a number of useful tables and graphs are provided. Note that basic operational amplifier circuits and transistor amplifier circuits are covered in separate chapters dealing with operational amplifiers and transistors.

## L-C Tuned Circuits

There are two types of simple L-C tuned circuit, which are the parallel and series varieties. These are shown in Figures 1.1(a) and $1.1(\mathrm{~b})$ respectively. When added into the signal path a parallel tuned circuit provides a low impedance at most frequencies, but a high impedance at or close to the resonant frequency. In theory at any rate, there is infinite impedance through a parallel tuned circuit at the resonant frequency. When used in the manner shown in Figure 1.1(a) a parallel tuned circuit therefore provides a notch response. This type of circuit is sometimes referred to as a "wavetrap". A parallel tuned circuit is more frequently used in the manner shown in Figure 1.2, where it provides a bandpass response. In practice the tuned circuit is often used as the load for an amplifier, rather than in the manner shown in Figure 1.2. The result is still a bandpass response. A series tuned circuit has a high impedance at most frequencies, but a low impedance close to resonance. Series resonant tuned circuits are little used in practice. In both cases the resonant frequency is given by the formula:-

$$
\mathrm{f}=1 / 2 \pi \sqrt{\mathrm{LC}}
$$

These tables shows the approximate resonant frequencies for some example $\mathrm{L}-\mathrm{C}$ values.

(b)


Fig.1.1 (a) Parallel resonant and (b) series resonant tuned circuits


Fig.1.2 A parallel tuned circuit used as a bandpass filter

| Inductance | $5 p$ | $10 p$ | $20 p$ | $40 p$ | $100 p$ |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $0.1 \mu \mathrm{H}$ | 225 MHz | 159 MHz | 112 MHz | 79.6 MHz | 50.3 MHz |
| $0.2 \mu \mathrm{H}$ | 159 MHz | 112 MHz | 79.6 MHz | 56.3 MHz | 35.6 MHz |
| $0.4 \mu \mathrm{H}$ | 112 MHz | 79.6 MHz | 56.2 MHz | 39.8 MHz | 22.5 MHz |
| $1.0 \mu \mathrm{H}$ | 71.2 MHz | 50.3 MHz | 35.6 MHz | 25.2 MHz | 15.9 MHz |
| $2.0 \mu \mathrm{H}$ | 50.3 MHz | 35.6 MHz | 25.2 MHz | 17.8 MHz | 11.3 MHz |
| $4.0 \mu \mathrm{H}$ | 35.6 MHz | 25.2 MHz | 17.8 MHz | 12.6 MHz | 7.96 MHz |
| $10 \mu \mathrm{H}$ | 22.5 MHz | 15.9 MHz | 11.2 MHz | 7.96 MHz | 5.03 MHz |
| $20 \mu \mathrm{H}$ | 15.9 MHz | 11.2 MHz | 7.96 MHz | 5.63 MHz | 3.56 MHz |
| $40 \mu \mathrm{H}$ | 11.2 MHz | 7.96 MHz | 5.62 MHz | 3.98 MHz | 2.25 MHz |
| $100 \mu \mathrm{H}$ | 7.12 MHz | 5.03 MHz | 3.56 MHz | 2.52 MHz | 1.59 MHz |
| $200 \mu \mathrm{H}$ | 5.03 MHz | 3.56 MHz | 2.52 MHz | 1.78 MHz | 1.13 MHz |
| $400 \mu \mathrm{H}$ | 3.56 MHz | 2.52 MHz | 1.78 MHz | 1.26 MHz | 796 kHz |
| 1 mH | 2.25 MHz | 1.59 MHz | 1.12 MHz | 796 kHz | 503 kHz |


| Inductance | $50 p$ | $100 p$ | $200 p$ | $400 p$ | $1 n$ |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 1 mH | 712 kHz | 503 kHz | 356 kHz | 252 kHz | 159 kHz |
| 2 mH | 503 kHz | 356 kHz | 252 kHz | 178 kHz | 113 kHz |
| 4 mH | 356 kHz | 252 kHz | 178 kHz | 126 kHz | 79.6 kHz |
| 10 mH | 225 kHz | 159 kHz | 112 kHz | 79.6 kHz | 50.3 kHz |
| 20 mH | 159 kHz | 112 kHz | 79.6 kHz | 56.3 kHz | 35.6 kHz |
| 40 mH | 112 kHz | 79.6 kHz | 56.2 kHz | 39.8 kHz | 22.5 kHz |
| 100 mH | 71.2 kHz | 50.3 kHz | 35.6 kHz | 25.2 kHz | 15.9 kHz |
| 200 mH | 50.3 kHz | 35.6 kHz | 25.2 kHz | 17.8 kHz | 11.3 kHz |
| 400 mH | 35.6 kHz | 25.2 kHz | 17.8 kHz | 12.6 kHz | 7.96 kHz |
| 1 H | 22.5 kHz | 15.9 kHz | 11.2 kHz | 7.96 kHz | 5.03 kHz |


| Inductance | $500 p$ | $l n$ | $2 n$ | $4 n$ | $10 n$ |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 10 mH | 71.2 kHz | 50.3 kHz | 35.6 kHz | 25.2 kHz | 15.9 kHz |
| 20 mH | 50.3 kHz | 35.6 kHz | 25.2 kHz | 17.8 kHz | 11.3 kHz |
| 40 mH | 35.6 kHz | 25.2 kHz | 17.8 kHz | 12.6 kHz | 7.96 kHz |
| 100 mH | 22.5 kHz | 15.9 kHz | 11.2 kHz | 7.96 kHz | 5.03 kHz |
| 200 mH | 15.9 kHz | 11.2 kHz | 7.96 kHz | 5.63 kHz | 3.56 kHz |
| 400 mH | 11.2 kHz | 7.96 kHz | 5.63 kHz | 3.98 kHz | 2.25 kHz |
| 1 H | 7.12 kHz | 5.03 kHz | 3.56 kHz | 2.52 kHz | 1.59 kHz |
| 2 H | 5.03 kHz | 3.56 kHz | 2.52 kHz | 1.78 kHz | 1.13 kHz |
| 4 H | 3.56 kHz | 2.52 kHz | 1.78 kHz | 1.26 kHz | 796 Hz |
| 10 H | 2.25 kHz | 1.59 kHz | 1.12 kHz | 796 Hz | 503 Hz |


| Inductance | $5 n$ | $10 n$ | $20 n$ | $40 n$ | 100 n |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 100 mH | 7.12 kHz | 5.03 kHz | 3.56 kHz | 2.52 kHz | 1.59 kHz |
| 200 mH | 5.03 kHz | 3.56 kHz | 2.52 kHz | 1.78 kHz | 1.13 kHz |
| 400 mH | 3.56 kHz | 2.52 kHz | 1.78 kHz | 1.26 kHz | 796 Hz |
| 1 H | 2.52 kHz | 1.59 kHz | 1.12 kHz | 796 Hz | 503 Hz |
| 2 H | 1.59 kHz | 1.12 kHz | 796 Hz | 563 Hz | 356 Hz |
| 4 H | 1.12 kHz | 796 Hz | 563 Hz | 398 Hz | 225 Hz |
| 10 H | 712 Hz | 503 Hz | 356 Hz | 252 Hz | 159 Hz |
| 20 H | 503 Hz | 356 Hz | 252 Hz | 178 Hz | 113 Hz |
| 40 H | 356 Hz | 252 Hz | 178 Hz | 126 Hz | 79.6 Hz |
| 100 H | 252 Hz | 159 Hz | 112 Hz | 79.6 Hz | 50.3 Hz |

## Meter Resistors

The sensitivity of a current meter can be reduced if a shunt resistor is used, as in Figure 1.3(a). It can be made to operate as a voltmeter by adding a series resistor, as in Figure 1.3(b). In both cases it is essential to know the resistance of the meter in order to calculate the value of the extra resistor. This formula gives the value for a shunt resistor:

$$
R=\frac{\text { Meter } \mathrm{R} \times \text { Meter } I}{\text { Required } I-\text { Meter I }}
$$

For example, if the meter resistance is 100 ohms, its full scale value is 100 milliamps ( 0.1 A ), and a full scale value of 1 amp is required, the required shunt resistance is 11.11 ohms ( $100 \times$ $0.1 / 1-0.1=11.11$ ).

The value of a series resistor is calculated by first working out the total resistance through the meter and the series resistor. This is just a matter of applying Ohm's Law, and dividing the required full scale voltage by the meter's full scale current. For instance, suppose that a meter having a full scale value of 1 mA ( 0.001 A ) must be used as a voltmeter having a full scale value of 100 volts. This gives a total resistance of 100000 ohms $(100 \mathrm{~V} / 0.001 \mathrm{~A}=100000 \mathrm{ohms})$, or 100 k in other words.

A voltmeter must not draw much current from the main circuit, so it is normally based on a $50 \mu \mathrm{~A}, 100 \mu \mathrm{~A}, 500 \mu \mathrm{~A}$, or 1 mA meter. The total resistance for meters of these sensitivities is equal to $20 \mathrm{k}, 10 \mathrm{k}, 2 \mathrm{k}$, and 1 k per full scale volt. Thus our 1 mA


Fig.1.3 (a) Adding a shunt resistor to a meter, and (b) adding a series resistor
meter requires a total resistance of 100 k ( 100 volts at 1 k per volt equals 100 k ).

Deducting the resistance of the meter gives the value for the series resistor. For instance, if the meter has a resistance of 500 ohms ( 0.5 k ), in our example the correct value for the series resistor is $99.5 \mathrm{k}(100 \mathrm{k}-0.5 \mathrm{k}=99.5 \mathrm{k})$. With high full scale values the resistance of the meter will be very low in relation to the full resistance of the circuit, and it can then be ignored. In this example the meter's resistance is only $0.5 \%$ of the total resistance, which would be insignificant in many applications.

## Digital Meters

The situation is rather different for digital panel meters, which are generally voltage rather than current operated. Unless the meter is supplied with an internal shunt resistor, it will probably have a full scale value of 0.1999 volts, rather than a certain current. It is obviously not possible to recalibrate a digital meter, so the only practical alternatives to the basic sensitivity are full scale values of $1.999,19.99$ and 199.9 volts. These require attenuation factors of nine to one, 99 to one, and 999 to one respectively. The input resistance of the meter is normally so high that it can be ignored. Figure 1.4 shows the circuit for attenuator that can be used to reduce the sensitivity of a digital panel meter. This table shows the values of R1 and R2 for full

scale values of $1.999,19.99$, and 199.9 volts. In each case the input resistance is over 10 M .

| Full Scale Voltage | $R 1$ | $R 2$ |
| :--- | :---: | :---: |
| 1.999 V | 10 M | 1.111 M |
| 19.99 V | 10 M | 101 k |
| 199.9 V | 10 M | 10.01 k |

Obviously the values for R 2 are a bit awkward, as none of them are preferred values. The required values must therefore be made up from two or three resistors wired in series. For example, a value of 1.111 megohms can be made by using a 1.1 megohm resistor in series with a 11 k component.

Current measurement requires a shunt resistor to be added across the meter, as in Figure 1.5. Again, there are only a limited range of realistic full scale current values since recalibration of a digital meter is not possible. This table shows various full scale values and the shunt resistances required to produce them.


Fig.1.5 Using a digital panel meter to provide current measurement

| Full Scale Value | Shunt Resistance |
| :--- | :--- |
| $19.9 \mu \mathrm{~A}$ | 100 k |
| $199.9 \mu \mathrm{~A}$ | 10 k |
| 1.999 mA | 1 k |
| 19.99 mA | 100 R |
| 199.9 mA | 10 R |
| 1.999 A | 1 R |
| 19.99 A | 0.1 R |

## L.E.D. Current

Calculating the value of a current limiting resistor for a l.e.d. is very simple, but seems to get many people decidedly vexed. A l.e.d. must normally be fed from the supply, logic output, or whatever, via a series current limiting resistor, as in Figure 1.6. Otherwise the l.e.d. will draw a very high current, possibly damaging both the l.e.d. itself and the driving circuit. The essential point to bear in mind is that the forward voltage across a l.e.d. is much higher than the voltage across a forward biased silicon diode. It is about 1.8 volts or so, as opposed to about


Fig.1.6 A l.e.d. is normally driven via a series resistor
0.6 volts or so for a normal silicon diode. The voltage across the series resistor is therefore about 1.8 volts less than the supply voltage. The first step is to deduct 1.8 volts from the supply voltage to obtain the voltage across the l.e.d. Ohm's Law can then be used to calculate the value of the series resistor, and this is just a matter of dividing the voltage across the resistor by the required l.e.d. current.

Suppose that a l.e.d. must be driven at a current of 10 milliamps ( 0.01 amps ), and that a 9 volt supply is to be used. The voltage across the series resistor will be 7.2 volts ( $9-1.8$ volts equals 7.2 volts). Dividing 7.2 volts by 0.01 amps gives a value for the series resistor of 720 ohms. In practice the nearest preferred value above the calculated value often has to be used. In this case a 750 ohm resistor would be used. This gives a typical l.e.d. current of 9.6 milliamps, which should give good results.

Provided the supply voltage is adequate, it is possible to drive two or more l.e.d.s in series, as in Figure 1.7. Remember though, that 1.8 volts per l.e.d. has to be allowed when calculating the voltage across the series resistor. In this example there are three l.e.d.s in series, giving a total of 5.4 volts across the l.e.d.s. With a 9 volt supply this would give only 3.6 volts across the series resistor. Al.e.d. current of 10 milliamps would therefore require a 360 ohm series resistor.

## 555 Monostable

Figure 1.8 shows the circuit for a basic 555 timer used in the monostable mode. Cl is merely a supply decoupling capacitor, and it is advisable to use a fairly high value here (at least $100 \mu$ ) as the 555 tends to "crowbar" the supply on output transitions. Most low power 555s are largely free from this problem, and require less decoupling. The circuit is triggered by briefly pulsing pin 2 low. In this case "low" means less than one third of the supply potential. A basic 555 monostable can only operate as a pulse stretcher, so it is important that the input pulse ends before the output pulse in due to finish. Otherwise the output pulse will be elongated.

The output pulse duration is set by R1 and C2, and is equal to $1.1 \mathrm{R} 1 \times \mathrm{C} 2$ seconds. For example, values of 470 n and 680 k


Fig.1.7 Using several l.e.d.s in series gives less voltage across R1
give a pulse duration of 0.35156 seconds $(0.47 \times 0.68 \times 1.1=$ 0.35156 seconds). It is generally more convenient to work in megohms and microfarads, rather than ohms and farads, as in this example. A positive output pulse is produced incidentally. R1 should have a value of no more than 20 megohms. The minimum recommended value is 3 k , but values down to 1 k are generally safe, particularly when low supply voltages are used.

This table shows the output pulse durations for a range of $\mathbf{C}$ and $R$ values, and this should aid the selection of suitable values for R1 and C2.


Fig.1.8 The basic 555 monostakle configuration

| $R 1$ | $C 2$ | Pulse Duration |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| lk | 1 n | $1.1 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| lk | $\ln 5$ | $1.65 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| lk | 2 n 2 | $2.42 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| lk | 3 n 3 | $3.63 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| lk | 4 n 7 | $5.17 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| lk | 6 n 8 | $7.48 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| lk | 10 n | $11 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| lk2 | $\ln$ | $1.32 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| lk2 | $\ln 5$ | $1.98 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| lk2 | 2 n 2 | $2.904 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| lk2 | 3 n 3 | $4.356 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| lk2 | 4 n 7 | $6.204 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| lk2 | 6 n 8 | $8.976 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| lk2 | 10 n | $13.2 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |


| 1k5 | 1 n | $1.65 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1k5 | 1 n 5 | $2.475 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 1k5 | 2 n 2 | $3.63 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 1k5 | 3 n 3 | $4.95 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 1k5 | 4 n 7 | $7.755 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 1k5 | 6 n 8 | $11.22 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 1k5 | 10 n | $16.5 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 1k8 | 1 n | $1.98 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 1k8 | 1 n 5 | $2.97 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 1k8 | 2 n 2 | $4.356 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 1k8 | 3 n 3 | $6.534 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 1k8 | 4 n 7 | $9.306 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 1k8 | 6 n 8 | $13.464 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 1k8 | 10 n | $19.8 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 2k2 | 1 n | $2.42 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 2k2 | 1 n 5 | $3.63 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 2k2 | 2n2 | $5.324 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 2k2 | 3n3 | $7.986 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 2k2 | 4 n 7 | $11.374 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 2k2 | 6 n 8 | $16.456 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 2k2 | 10 n | $24.2 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 2k7 | 1 n | $2.97 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 2k7 | 1 n 5 | 4.455 $\mu \mathrm{s}$ |
| 2k7 | 2 n 2 | 6.534 $\mu \mathrm{s}$ |
| 2k7 | 3 n 3 | $9.801 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 2k7 | 4 n 7 | $13.959 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 2k7 | 6 n 8 | $20.196 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 2k7 | 10 n | $29.7 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 3k3 | 1 n | $3.63 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 3k3 | 1 n 5 | $5.445 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 3k3 | 2 n 2 | 7.986 $\mu \mathrm{s}$ |
| 3k3 | 3 n 3 | $11.979 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 3k3 | 4 n 7 | $17.061 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 3k3 | 6 n 8 | $24.684 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 3k3 | 10 n | $36.3 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 3k9 | 1 n | $4.29 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 3k9 | $\ln 5$ | $6.435 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 3k9 | 2n2 | $9.438 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 3k9 | 3n3 | $14.157 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 3k9 | $4 \mathrm{n7}$ | $20.163 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |


| 3k9 | 6 n 8 | $29.172 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 3k9 | 10 n | $42.9 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 4k7 | 1 n | 5.17 $\mu \mathrm{s}$ |
| 4k7 | 1 n 5 | 7.755 $\mu \mathrm{s}$ |
| 4k7 | 2n2 | $11.374 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 4k7 | 3 n 3 | $17.061 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 4k7 | 4 n 7 | $24.299 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 4k7 | 6 n 8 | $35.156 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 4k7 | 10 n | $51.7 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 5k6 | 1 n | $6.16 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 5k6 | 1 n 5 | 9.24 $\mu \mathrm{s}$ |
| 5k6 | 2n2 | $13.552 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 5k6 | 3 n 3 | $21.78 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 5k6 | 4 n 7 | $28.952 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 5k6 | 6 n 8 | $41.888 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 5k6 | 10 n | 61.64 s |
| 6k8 | 1 n | 7.48 $\mu \mathrm{s}$ |
| 6k8 | 1 n 5 | $11.22 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 6k8 | 2 n 2 | $16.456 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 6k8 | 3n3 | $24.684 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 6k8 | 4 n 7 | $35.156 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 6k8 | 6 n 8 | $50.864 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 6k8 | 10n | $74.8 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 8k2 | 1 n | $9.02 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 8k2 | 1 n 5 | $13.53 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 8k2 | 2 n 2 | $19.844 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 8k2 | 3n3 | $29.766 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 8k2 | 4 n 7 | $42.394 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 8k2 | 6 n 8 | $61.336 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 8k2 | 10 n | $90.2 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 10k | 1 n | $11 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 10k | 1 n 5 | $16.5 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 10k | 2n2 | $24.2 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 10k | 3n3 | $36.3 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 10k | $4 \mathrm{n7}$ | 51.7 s |
| 10k | 6 n 8 | 74.8 ${ }^{\text {s }}$ |
| 10k | 10n | 110 ${ }^{\text {s }}$ |

Each time the value of R1 or C2 is raised by one decade, the pulse duration is increased by a factor of 10 . Thus, a pulse
duration of $1.353 \mathrm{~ms}(1353 \mu \mathrm{~s})$ could be obtained using values of 82 k and 15 n . Values of 820 k and ln 5 would provide the same pulse duration, as would values of 8 k 2 and 150 n . Although most low power 555s are accurate at pulse durations down to at $1 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ or less, it is advisable to use the standard 555 at pulse durations of no less than $5 \mu \mathrm{~s}$.


The graphs of Figure 1.9 also help in the selection of suitable timing values, but these only enable approximate values to be selected. Some calculation or reference to the timing component table will be needed if values are being selected for critical applications.

## CMOS Monostables

The circuit diagram for a simple monostable based on two CMOS NOR logic gates is shown in Figure 1.10. This is

triggered by a low-to-high transition at normal CMOS logic levels. Unlike the 555 astable, this circuit is not retriggerable. Therefore, each positive output pulse will end at the correct time, even if the input is held in the high state. The duration of the output pulse is not as predictable as that of a 555 monostable. C1 and R1 are the timing components. The pulse duration is approximately $0.65 \mathrm{Cl} \times \mathrm{R} 1$ seconds. For instance, values of 100 k and $10 \mathrm{n}(0.01 \mu)$ would give a pulse time of roughly $0.65 \mathrm{~ms}(0.1 \mathrm{M} \times 0.01 \mu \times 0.65=0.00065$ seconds, or 0.65 ms ).

Figure 1.11 shows the circuit diagram for an alternative form of CMOS monostable. This is based on two CMOS NAND gates. It is triggered on a high-to-low transition, and the output pulses low when the circuit is triggered. As before, the duration of the output pulse is approximately $0.65 \mathrm{C} 1 \times \mathrm{R} 1$ seconds. R1 can have any value from about 4 k 7 upwards.


Fig.1.11 An alternative monostable circuit

This table shows approximate pulse durations for a range of values for Cl and R1.

| RI | $C I$ | Pulse Duration |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 10 k | 1 n | $0.65 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 10 k | 1 n 5 | $0.975 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 10 k | 2 n 2 | $1.43 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 10 k | 3 n 3 | $2.145 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 10 k | 4 n 7 | 3.005 s |
| 10 k | 6 n 8 | $4.42 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 10 k | 10 n | $6.5 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 12 k | 1 n | $0.78 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 12 k | $1 \mathrm{n5}$ | $1.17 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 12 k | 2 n 2 | 1.716 s |
| 12 k | 3 n 3 | $2.574 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 12 k | 4 n 7 | $4.507 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 12 k | 6 n 8 | $5.304 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 12 k | 10 n | $7.8 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 15 k | 1 n | $0.975 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 15 k | 1 n 5 | $1.462 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |


| 15k | 2n2 | $2.145 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 15k | 3 n 3 | $3.217 \mu s$ |
| 15k | 4n7 | $4.582 \mu s$ |
| 15k | 6 n 8 | $6.63 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 15k | 10 n | $9.75 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 18k | $\ln$ | $1.17 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 18k | $\ln 5$ | $1.755 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 18k | 2 n 2 | $2.574 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 18k | 3 n 3 | $3.861 \mu s$ |
| 18k | 4 n 7 | $5.499 \mu s$ |
| 18k | 6 n 8 | $7.956 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 18k | 10 n | $11.7 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 22k | 1 n | $1.43 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 22k | $\ln 5$ | $2.145 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 22k | 2 n 2 | $3.146 \mu s$ |
| 22k | 3 n 3 | $4.719 \mu s$ |
| 22k | 4n7 | $6.721 \mu s$ |
| 22k | 6 n 8 | $9.724 \mu s$ |
| 22k | $10 n$ | $14.3 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 27k | 1 n | $1.755 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 27k | $\ln 5$ | $2.632 \mu s$ |
| 27k | 2 n 2 | $3.861 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 27k | 3 n 3 | $5.791 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 27k | 4 n 7 | 8.248 $\mu \mathrm{s}$ |
| 27k | 6 n 8 | $11.934 \mu s$ |
| 27k | 10 n | $17.55 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 33k | $\ln$ | $2.145 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 33k | $\ln 5$ | $3.217 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 33k | 2 n 2 | $4.719 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 33k | 3 n 3 | 7.078 $\mu \mathrm{s}$ |
| 33k | 4n7 | $10.081 \mu s$ |
| 33k | $6 n 8$ | 14.586 $\mu$ s |
| 33k | $10 n$ | $21.45 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 39k | $\ln$ | $2.535 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 39k | $\ln 5$ | $3.802 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 39k | 2 n 2 | $5.577 \mu s$ |
| 39k | 3 n 3 | $8.365 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 39k | 4 n 7 | $11.914 \mu s$ |
| 39k | $6 n 8$ | $17.238 \mu s$ |
| 39k | $10 n$ | $25.35 \mu s$ |


| 47k | 1 n | $3.055 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 47k | 1 n 5 | $4.582 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 47k | 2 n 2 | $6.721 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 47k | 3n3 | $10.081 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 47k | $4 \mathrm{n7}$ | $14.358 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 47k | 6 n 8 | $20.774 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 47k | 10 n | $30.55 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 56k | 1 n | $3.64 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 56k | 1 n 5 | $5.46 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 56k | 2n2 | $8.008 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 56k | 3n3 | $12.012 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 56k | $4 \mathrm{n7}$ | $17.108 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 56k | 6 n 8 | $24.752 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 56k | 10 n | $36.4 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 68k | 1 n | $4.42 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 68k | 1 n 5 | $6.63 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 68k | 2n2 | $9.724 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 68k | 3n3 | $14.586 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 68k | $4 \mathrm{n7}$ | $20.774 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 68k | 6 n 8 | $30.056 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 68k | 10 n | $44.2 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 82k | 1 n | $5.33 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 82k | 1 n 5 | 7.995 $\mu \mathrm{s}$ |
| 82k | 2 n 2 | $11.726 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 82k | 3n3 | $17.589 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 82k | $4 \mathrm{n7}$ | $25.051 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 82k | 6 n 8 | $43.706 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 82k | 10 n | $53.3 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 100k | 1 n | $6.5 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 100k | 1 n 5 | $9.75 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 100k | 2 n 2 | $14.3 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 100k | 3n3 | $21.45 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 100k | 4 n 7 | 30.05s |
| 100k | 6 n 8 | $44.2 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| 100k | 10 n | $65 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |

The timing graphs of Figure 1.12 are useful when selecting timing component values for the two CMOS monostables, but they only enable approximate values to be determined.


## 555 Astable

The circuit diagram for a basic 555 astable (oscillator) appears in Figure 1.13. Like the 555 monostable, it is advisable to use a large decoupling capacitor if a standard 555 is used. In theory it is necessary to include C3 tc filter out stray pick-up at the modulation input of the 555 . In practice this capacitor is normally omitted, with no signs of any ill effects.

The output waveform at pin 3 of IC1 is a pulse signal, but for a normal 555 astable it is never a squarewave. This is due to the way in which the timing circuit functions. The timing components are R1, R2, and C2. C2 charges to two thirds of the supply voltage via R1 and R2, and then discharges to one third of the supply potential by way of R2 and an internal transistor of the 555. The circuit oscillates indefinitely in this fashion, with the charge on C2 going to and fro between onethird and two-thirds of the supply voltage. The output at pin 3


Fig.1.13 The basic 555 astable circuit
is high while C 2 is charging, and low when it is discharging. The output of the standard circuit can not be a squarewave because C2 charges through R1 and R2, but only discharges through R2. This results in a charge time which is longer than the discharge time, although making the value of R1 low in comparison to that of R2 minimises the disparity. The operating frequency is equal to:

$$
\mathrm{f}=1.44 /\{(\mathrm{R} 1+2 \mathrm{R} 2) \mathrm{C} 2\}
$$

As a simple example, suppose that C 2 has a value of 10 n , and that R1 and R2 are respectively 10 k and 100 k components. First the total effective timing resistance must be calculated. This is equal to twice 100 k plus 10 k , which is clearly 210 k $(0.21 \mathrm{M})$. This is multiplied by the value of C 2 , which is $0.01 \mu$,
giving an answer of 0.0021 . Finally, dividing 1.44 by this figure gives the operating frequency in hertz. According to my calculator this works out at 685.71 Hz . Note that, once again, it is easier to work with the resistance values in megohms, and the capacitance value in microfarads, rather than in ohms and farads.

The time for which the output is high is given by the formula:

$$
t=0.693(R 1+R 2) C 2 \text { seconds }
$$

The low output period is given by the formula:

$$
t=0.693 \mathrm{R} 2 \times \mathrm{C} 2 \text { seconds }
$$

Applying these formulas to the example values used previously, the high output time works out at $0.11 \mathrm{M} \times 0.01 \mu \times 0.693$,



Fig.1.15 A further set of graphs for 555 astables
which equals 0.0007623 seconds, or $762.3 \mu \mathrm{~s}$. The low output period is equal to $0.1 \mathrm{M} \times 0.01 \mu \times 0.693$, which comes to 0.000693 seconds, or $693 \mu \mathrm{~s}$.

The graphs of Figures 1.14 and 1.15 are useful when selecting suitable values for the timing components in a 555 astable. These show the frequencies produced by a range of timing resistances and capacitances. Note that the resistances are the total timing resistances (i.e R1 plus $2 \times \mathrm{R} 2$ ). For example, a timing resistance of about 100 k would be produced using 33 k resistors for R1 and R2, and a 30k total timing resistance would be produced using a value of 10 k for both R1 and R2. When using these graphs it is essential to bear in mind that both the capacitance and frequency axes are logarithmic. The graphs will only give a rough indication of the timing values needed for a given output frequency, and where necessary some calculations will be needed in order to "fine tune" the values to ones
that will give the required frequency with a suitable degree of accuracy.

## Wien Oscillator

Figure 1.16 shows the basic circuit for Wien oscillator, or Wien bridge oscillator as it is also known. ICl is an operational amplifier that is used in the non-inverting mode. R3, R5, C3 and C4 form a phase shift network which provides frequency selective feedback over the amplifier. At a certain frequency there is zero phase shift through this Wien network, and positive feedback is applied over the amplifier. Provided the gain of the amplifier is greater than the losses through the Wien network at this frequency, the circuit will oscillate.

A closed loop voltage gain of only about three times is needed in order to produce oscillation. The output waveform is a high quality sinewave, but only if the gain of the amplifier is maintained at a level which is just about adequate to sustain oscillation. Slightly lower gain causes oscillation to subside and then cease altogether. A slight excess of gain results in a severely clipped output signal that is more like a low grade squarewave than a sinewave signal. In this circuit the value of VR1 is carefully adjusted to a setting that gives a good quality output signal. Better results are obtained using an RA53 thermistor to provide gain stabilisation. The RA53 is connected in place of VR1 and R6, and the value of R4 must be reduced to about 680R. The modified circuit is shown in Figure 1.17. The output level is about one volt r.m.s. ( 2.8 volts peak-to-peak).

The operating frequency of the circuit is controlled by R3, R5, C3, and C4. In a practical circuit the value of R3 is normally equal to that of R5, and the two capacitors also have the same value. The operating frequency is then given by the formula:

$$
\mathrm{f}=1 / 6.283 \mathrm{C} \text { R hertz }
$$

The graphs of Figure 1.18 are a useful to finding suitable $C-R$ values, but this will only provide a rough guide to component selection. This table shows a range of approximate $\mathbf{C}-\mathbf{R}$ values for various output frequencies, and should also prove helpful.


Fig.1.16 The basic Wien oscillator configuration


Fig.1.17 The circuit for a gain stabilised Wien oscillator


Fig.1.18 Frequency graphs for a Wien oscillator

| Frequency | 500 p | 1 n | $2 n$ | $5 n$ | $10 n$ |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 25 Hz | 12.8 M | 6.4 M | 3.2 M | 1.28 M | 640 k |
| 50 Hz | 6.4 M | 3.2 M | 1.6 M | 640 k | 320 k |
| 100 Hz | 3.2 M | 1.6 M | 800 k | 320 k | 160 k |
| 150 Hz | 2.2 M | 1.1 M | 530 k | 220 k | 110 k |
| 200 Hz | 1.6 M | 800 k | 400 k | 160 k | 80 k |
| 300 Hz | 1.1 M | 530 k | 270 k | 110 k | 53 k |
| 400 Hz | 800 k | 400 k | 200 k | 80 k | 40 k |
| 500 Hz | 640 k | 320 k | 160 k | 64 k | 32 k |
| 750 Hz | 430 k | 220 k | 110 k | 43 k | 22 k |
| 1 kHz | 320 k | 160 k | 80 k | 32 k | 16 k |
| 2 kHz | 160 k | 80 k | 40 k | 16 k | 8 k |
| 3 kHz | 110 k | 53 k | 27 k | 11 k | 5.3 k |
| 4 kHz | 80 k | 40 k | 20 k | 8 k | 4 k |
| 5 kHz | 64 k | 32 k | 16 k | 6.4 k | 3.2 k |
| 7.5 kHz | 43 k | 22 k | 11 k | 4.3 k | 2.2 k |


| 10 kHz | 32k | 16k | 8k | 3.2k | 1.6k |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 20 kHz | 16k | 8k | 4k | 1.6k | 800R |
| 50 kHz | 6.4k | 3.2k | 1.6k | 640R | 320R |
| 100 kHz | 3.2k | 1.6k | 800R | 320R | 160R |
| Frequency | $20 n$ | $50 n$ | $100 n$ | $200 n$ | 500n |
| 25 Hz | 320k | 160k | 64k | 32k | 12.8k |
| 50 Hz | 160k | 64k | 32k | 16k | 6.4k |
| 100 Hz | 80k | 32k | 16k | 8k | 3.2k |
| 150 Hz | 53k | 22k | 11k | 5.3k | 2.2k |
| 200 Hz | 40k | 16k | 8k | 4k | 1.6k |
| 300 Hz | 27k | 11k | 5.3k | 2.7k | 1.1k |
| 400 Hz | 20k | 8k | 4k | 2k | 800R |
| 500 Hz | 16k | 6.4k | 3.2k | 1.6k | 640R |
| 750 Hz | 11k | 4.3k | 2.2k | 1.1k | 430R |
| 1 kHz | 8k | 3.2k | 1.6k | 800R | 320R |
| 2 kHz | 4k | 1.6k | 800R | 400R | 160R |
| 3 kHz | 2.7k | 1.1k | 530R | 270R | 110R |
| 4 kHz | 2k | 800R | 400R | 200R | 80R |
| 5 kHz | 1.6k | 640R | 320R | 160R | 64R |
| 7.5 kHz | 1.1k | 430R | 220R | 110R | 43R |
| 10 kHz | 800R | 320R | 160R | 80R | 32R |
| 20 kHz | 400R | 160R | 80R | 40R | 16R |
| 50 kHz | 160R | 64R | 32R | 16R | 6.4R |
| 100 kHz | 80R | 32R | 16R | 8R | 3.2R |

## Basic C - R Filters

The circuits of Figure 1.19 are for basic lowpass (a) and highpass (b) filters having an ultimate attenuation rate of 6 dB per octave. In other words, for the lowpass filter a doubling of frequency produces a doubling of the circuit's losses. In the case of the highpass filter, a halving of the input frequency produces a doubling of the circuit's losses. The introduction of the attenuation is relatively gradual with these simple passive filters. The cutoff frequency of a highpass or lowpass filter is the frequency where the response reaches the -3 dB point. For both types of filter the cutoff frequency is given by the formula:

$$
f=1 / 2 \pi R \times C
$$



This can be simplified to:-

$$
\mathrm{f}=1.59 / \mathrm{R} \times \mathrm{C}
$$

Thus values of 10 k and 10 n would give a cutoff frequency at $1.59 \mathrm{kHz}(0.01 \mathrm{M} \times 0.01 \mu=0.001,1.59$ divided by 0.001 equals 1590 Hz , or 1.59 kHz ). As usual, it is easier to work in megohms and microfarads, rather than ohms and farads. The required resistance for a given capacitance value and cutoff frequency can be obtained using this formula:

$$
\mathrm{R}=0.159 / \mathrm{f} \times \mathrm{C}
$$

For instance, suppose that a cutoff frequency of 3 kHz is required, and a capacitance value of 10 n has been selected as a starting point. Multiplying the frequency by the capacitance value gives an answer of $30(3000 \mathrm{~Hz} \times 0.01 \mu=30)$. Dividing 0.159 by 30 gives the required resistance value of 0.0053 megohms, or 5.3 k in other words. The nearest preferred value of 5.1 k would therefore be used.

This table gives approximate cutoff frequencies for a range of values for R1 and C1.

| Capacitance | Ik | 2k | 5k | 10k | 20k |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 10p | 16 MHz | 8 MHz | 3.2 MHz | 1.6 MHz | 800 kHz |
| 20p | 8 MHz | 4 MHz | 1.6 MHz | 800 kHz | 400 kHz |
| 50p | 3.2 MHz | 1.6 MHz | 640 kHz | 320 kHz | 160 kHz |
| 100p | 1.6 MHz | 800 kHz | 320 kHz | 160 kHz | 80 kHz |
| 200p | 800 kHz | 400 kHz | 160 kHz | 80 kHz | 40 kHz |
| 500p | 320 kHz | 160 kHz | 64 kHz | 32 kHz | 16 kHz |
| 1 n | 160 kHz | 80 kHz | 32 kHz | 16 kHz | 8 kHz |
| 2n | 80 kHz | 40kHz | 16 kHz | 8 kHz | 4 kHz |
| 5n | 32 kHz | 16 kHz | 6.4 kHz | 3.2 kHz | 1.6 kHz |
| 10n | 16 kHz | 8 kHz | 3.2 kHz | 1.6 kHz | 800 Hz |
| 20n | 8 kHz | 4 kHz | 1.6 kHz | 800 Hz | 400 Hz |
| 50n | 3.2 kHz | 1.6 kHz | 640 Hz | 320 Hz | 160 Hz |
| 100 n | 1.6 kHz | 800 Hz | 320 Hz | 160 Hz | 80 Hz |
| 200n | 800 Hz | 400 Hz | 160 Hz | 80 Hz | 40 Hz |
| 500 n | 320 Hz | 160 Hz | 64 Hz | 32 Hz | 16 Hz |
| $1 \mu$ | 160 Hz | 80 Hz | 32 Hz | 16 Hz | 8 Hz |
| $2 \mu$ | 80 Hz | 40 Hz | 16 Hz | 8 Hz | 4 Hz |
| $5 \mu$ | 32 Hz | 16 Hz | 6.4 Hz | 3.2 Hz | 1.6 Hz |
| $10 \mu$ | 16 Hz | 8 Hz | 3.2 Hz | 1.6 Hz | 0.8 Hz |
| $20 \mu$ | 8 Hz | 4 Hz | 1.6 Hz | 0.8 Hz | 0.4 Hz |
| $50 \mu$ | 3.2 Hz | 1.6 Hz | 0.64 Hz | 0.32 Hz | 0.16 Hz |
| 10\% | 1.6 Hz | 0.8 Hz | 0.32 Hz | 0.16 Hz | 0.08 Hz |
| Capacitance | 50k | 100k | 200k | 500k | IM |
| 10p | 320 kHz | 160 kHz | 80 kHz | 32 kHz | 16 kHz |
| 20p | 160 kHz | 80 kHz | 40 kHz | 16 kHz | 8 kHz |
| 50p | 64 kHz | 32 kHz | 16 kHz | 6.4 kHz | 3.2 kHz |
| 100p | 32 kHz | 16 kHz | 8 kHz | 3.2 kHz | 1.6 kHz |
| 200p | 16 kHz | 8 kHz | 4 kHz | 1.6 kHz | 800 Hz |
| 500p | 6.4 kHz | 3.2 kHz | 1.6 kHz | 640 Hz | 320 Hz |
| 1 n | 3.2 kHz | 1.6 kHz | 800 Hz | 320 Hz | 160 Hz |
| 2n | 1.6 kHz | 800 Hz | 400 Hz | 160 Hz | 80H |
| 5n | 640 Hz | 320 Hz | 160 Hz | 64 Hz | 32 Hz |
| 10n | 320 Hz | 160 Hz | 80 Hz | 32 Hz | 16 Hz |
| 20n | 160 Hz | 80 Hz | 40 Hz | 16 Hz | 8 Hz |
| 50 n | 64 Hz | 32 Hz | 16 Hz | 6.4 Hz | 3.2 Hz |
| 100 n | 32 Hz | 16 Hz | 8Hz | 3.2 Hz | 1.6 Hz |
| 200n | 16 Hz | 8 Hz | 4 Hz | 1.6 Hz | 0.8 Hz |
| 500 n | 6.4 Hz | 3.2 Hz | 1.6 Hz | 0.64 Hz | 0.32 Hz |


| $1 \mu$ | 3.2 Hz | 1.6 Hz | 0.8 Hz | 0.32 Hz | 0.16 Hz |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $2 \mu$ | 1.6 Hz | 0.8 Hz | 0.4 Hz | 0.16 Hz | 0.08 Hz |
| $5 \mu$ | 0.64 Hz | 0.32 Hz | 0.16 Hz | 0.064 Hz | 0.032 Hz |
| $10 \mu$ | 0.32 Hz | 0.16 Hz | 0.08 Hz | 0.032 Hz | 0.016 Hz |

The graphs of Figures 1.20 to 1.22 are helpful when determining approximate values for basic highpass and lowpass filters. Bear in mind that the frequency axis and the capacitance axis both have logarithmic scaling.


Fig.1.20 Graphs showing filter cutoff frequencies

## Twin T Filter

The circuit of Figure 1.23 is for a twin T filter. The reason for its name should be readily apparent when looking at the circuit. This is a passive filter which provides a deep notch of attenuation. In practice it is normally necessary to use a buffer amplifier at the output, so that the filter "looks" into a suitably high


Fig.1.21 Further graphs showing filter cutoff frequencies
load impedance. In this case ICl acts as the output buffer stage, and biasing is provided by R1 and R2 via the resistors in the filter circuit. R3 and R5 must be equal in value, and have twice the resistance of R4. C2 and C4 should be equal in value, and have half the value of C3. This can be difficult using preferred values.

The usual solution is to make up R4 from two resistors wired in parallel, with each resistor having the same value as R3/5. Similarly, C3 can be made up from two capacitors in parallel which each have the same value as C2/C4. Figure 1.24 shows an example circuit of this type. In some applications it is necessary to use a preset resistor for R4, so that it can be adjusted for optimum attenuation at the notch frequency. The notch frequency is given by the formula:

$$
\mathrm{f}=1.59 / \mathrm{R} 3 \times \mathrm{C} 2
$$



Fig.1.22 Further graphs showing filter cutoff frequencies

For instance, suppose that this set of values is used in a twin T filter:

| R3/5 | 160 k |
| :--- | :--- |
| R4 | 80 k |
| C2/4 | 10 n |
| C3 | 20 n |

Multiplying the value of R3 by that of C2 gives a figure of $0.0016(0.16 \mathrm{M} \times 0.01 \mu$ equals 0.0016$)$. Dividing 0.159 by this figure gives an answer of 99.375 hertz. The filter would therefore produce a notch of deep attenuation at a frequency of about 100 Hz .


Fig.1.23 The circuit for a twin $T$ filter


Fig.1.24 A twin $T$ filter using parallel resistor and capacitors

## Bandpass Filter

An operational amplifier can be used as the basis of a simple but effective bandpass filter. Figure 1.25 shows the configuration for a filter of this type. The values of R1, R4, C1, and C2 determine the centre frequency and Q of the filter. For a Q value of 1 the mathematics of the filter are very straightforward. The centre frequency is given by the formula:

$$
\mathrm{f}=1.59 / \mathrm{R} \times \mathrm{C}
$$

C 1 and C 2 have a value equal to " C " in this formula, but R1 should be half the value of "R", and R4 should be twice the value of " $R$ ". If the value of $R 1$ and $R 4$ is equal to " $R$ ", the filter has a Q value of 0.5 , and its voltage gain drops from two times to 0.5 times. As an example, a value of 1 n for C 1 and C 2 , plus values of 5 k 6 and 22 k for R1 and R4, would give a centre frequency of approximately 1 kHz .

Higher $Q$ values can be obtained by making R1 lower in value, and R4 higher in value. Higher $Q$ gives reduced bandwidth and higher voltage gain. This table shows the effect of R1 and R4 on both of these factors.

| $R I$ | $R 4$ | $Q$ | V. GAIN |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $1 \times$ | $1 \times$ | 0.5 | 0.5 |
| $0.5 \times$ | $2 \times$ | 1 | 2 |
| $0.25 x$ | $4 \times$ | 2 | 8 |
| $0.125 x$ | $8 \times$ | 4 | 32 |
| $0.0625 x$ | $16 x$ | 8 | 128 |

It is inevitable with this type of filter that high $\mathbf{Q}$ also produces a high voltage gain. In practice this gain is often unwanted, and is counteracted by an additional resistor near the input of the filter, as shown in Figure 1.26. R5 effectively forms an attenuator in conjunction with R1, and reduces the overall gain of the circuit accordingly. Note though, that R5 has an effect on the gain and Q of the circuit, as it is effectively in parallel with R1 in this respect.


Fig.1.25 The basic bandpass filter configuration

## State-Variable Filter

Figure 1.27 shows the circuit diagram for a state-variable filter. This provides bandpass, notch, highpass, and lowpass responses, with a separate output for each one. The highpass and lowpass responses provide second order ( 12 dB per octave) responses. The operating frequency is set by C3, C4, R7, and R10. The centre frequency is given by the "standard" formula:

$$
f=0.159 / R \times C
$$

The tables, etc., provided earlier pertaining to basic lowpass and highpass filters can also be used to aid the selection of


Fig.1.26 The modified bandpass filter circuit
suitable values for this state-variable filter. The value of R8 controls the Q of the circuit, and the value for R 8 is obtained by multiplying the required $Q$ value by 10 k (e.g. a value of 51 k for a $Q$ of approximately five). R6 should be replaced with a $22 k$ trimpot if a very high degree of attenuation is required at the notch output. The trimpot is adjusted for optimum balance of the two input signals to IC2b, and well over 80 dB of attenuation should be possible.

## Power Supplies

Modern electronics tends to be extremely complex, but many circuits can still be battery powered due to the low current


Fig.1.27 The circuit diagram for the state-variable filter

consumptions of most integrated circuits. However, where portability is not a major consideration it is still likely to be more economic to use a mains power supply unit. The most simple type of mains power supply is the half-wave type, as shown in Figure 1.28. This is little used in practice since it is very inefficient and has a relatively high ripple content on the output. The transformer provides safety isolation from the dangerous mains supply voltage, and steps the mains voltage down to the required level. D1 enables pcsitive half cycles to pass through to the output, but it blocks negative half cycles. As with any of the standard rectifier circuits described here, reversing the polarity of the diode(s) and smoothing capacitor reverses the polarity of the output supply.

The inefficiency of the circuit is due to the fact that the negative half cycles are wasted. This also makes it hard to smooth the d.c. output signal, since the smcothing capacitor receives only 50 pulses per second, not 100 . It is often assumed that the maximum d.c. output current from a power supply is equal to the secondary current rating of the mains transformer, but
matters are not as simple as this. The maximum d.c. output current depends on the type of rectification used. For a half-wave rectifier the maximum d.c. output current is equal to just $28 \%$ of the transformer's secondary current rating. This renders half-wave rectification of little practical value except where very low output currents are required. The inefficiency of the circuit is then of little importance, since even a small mains transformer will be able to supply an excess of current. Also, with only a small output current there is little difficulty in smoothing the output signal.


Figure 1.29 shows the circuit for a basic full-wave power supply which uses two rectifiers in what is sometimes called a "push-pull" rectifier. The mains transformer must be a centretapped type, or have twin secondaries connected in series to give what is effectively a centre-tapped secondary. The circuit is basically just two half-wave circuits operating in anti-phase. D1 and D2 therefore supply pulses to smoothing capacitor C1 on alternate half cycles, giving full-wave rectification.


Fig.1.30 A bridge rectifier provides the highest efficiency

This might not seem to be much better than half-wave rectification, but the fact that it provides full-wave rectification makes it easier to smooth the d.c. output signal. Also, each half-wave section of the circuit greatly reduces the burden on the other section, giving increased efficiency. The maximum d.c. output current is equal to the secondary current rating of the transformer. This is not to say that the circuit is $100 \%$ efficient. The output voltage is only half that which would be obtained if the full secondary winding was used to drive a halfwave or bridge rectifier. The circuit is therefore about $50 \%$ efficient, which is still a great improvement over a half-wave circuit.

The circuit for a full-wave power supply using bridge rectification is shown in Figure 1.30. The four rectifiers steer the output of the transformer through to the output with the correct polarity, regardless of the polarity of the output signal from the transformer. The top right and bottom left rectifiers conduct when the top end of the winding is positive going, while the other two rectifiers conduct when the top end of the secondary winding is negative going. It is rather like having a switch that
reverses the polarity of the secondary winding on alternate half cycles, so that the polarity of the output signal is always the same.

In terms of efficiency the full-wave bridge rectifier is the best, but the maximum d.c. output current is still only about $62 \%$ of the transformer's secondary current rating. Multiplying the required maximum output current by 1.6 gives the minimum acceptable secondary current rating for the mains transformer. Practical circuits often seem to have a maximum d.c. output current that is not far removed from the transformer's output current rating. This is usually done where the maximum output current will only be drawn intermittently, and the average output current is substantially lower. This is still a bit risky though, and it is advisable to err on the side of caution when selecting a secondary current rating.

It is important to realise that the d.c. output voltage will not be equal to the transformer's secondary voltage. The secondary voltage rating of most mains transformers is their a.c. output voltage under full load. This load is a resistance placed directly across the secondary winding of the transformer. The rectfied and smoothed output voltage is equal to the peak output voltage from the transformer, minus the voltage drop through the rectifier circuit. The peak output voltage from the transformer is 1.41 times the r.m.s. value. The voltage drop through the rectifier circuit is about 0.7 volts for half-wave and pushpull circuits, and about 1.4 volts for bridge rectifiers. The voltage drops tend to be somewhat higher for high current supplies. Typical voltages drops are 1.1 and 2.2 volts respectively at currents of about one to two amps.

The loaded output voltage from a 12 volt transformer using bridge rectification would therefore be about 15.52 volts ( 12 volts $\times 1.41$ equals $16.92,16.92-1.4$ equals 15.52 volts). For a high current supply the output voltage would be a little lower, at just under 15 volts. The mains transformer only supplies current on the peaks of half cycles where the output voltage of the rectifier exceeds the voltage across the smoothing capacitor. The mains transformer is therefore providing short bursts of high current, and it is heavily loaded during these current pulses. This tends to reduce the d.c. output voltage from the circuit. Practical tests on a few mains transformers suggest that
this gives a reduction in the loaded output voltage of about $10 \%$ or so. Thus the actual output voltage from our example power supply would be about 14 volts.
The unloaded supply potential is much higher than the loaded output voltage, and is typically about $30 \%$ to $35 \%$ higher. In this example the unloaded output voltage would therefore be about 18 volts or so. The exact figure depends on the precise characteristics of the mains transformer used.

## Rectifiers

The half-wave and push-pull circuits require rectifiers that have a peak inverse voltage (p.i.v.) rating of at least double the unloaded d.c. output voltage. It is a common mistake to assume that the rectifiers only need a voltage rating equal to or greater than the normal d.c. output voltage of the circuit. However, the rectifiers must be able to handle the unloaded output voltage, which will be substantially higher than the loaded figure. Of greater significance, on negative half cycles the anode ( - ) terminal of each rectifier is taken to a negative potential roughly equal to the positive potential on the cathode. These two potentials add together, giving a peak voltage across each rectifier that is roughly double the d.c. output voltage. It is advisable to choose a rectifier that has a p.i.v. rating of at least four times the secondary voltage rating of the mains transformer. 100 volt rectifiers would therefore be satisfactory when using a 24 volt transformer.

A bridge rectifier can be made up from four separate rectifiers, or a bridge rectifier module can be used. If separate rectifiers are utilized, they should have a p.i.v. rating equal to at least four times the mains transformer's secondary voltage. The voltage ratings quoted for bridge rectifiers are normally the p.i.v. ratings of the rectifiers within the bridge, and not the maximum a.c. input potential or d.c. output voltage. Once again, the rectifier must have a voltage rating equal to at least four times the secondary voltage rating of the mains transformer.

The maximum current rating for a rectifier, whether a bridge type or a single rectifier, is the maximum permissible average current flow. Simply choose a rectifier that has a current rating that is at least equal to the maximum d.c. output current that will be drawn from the supply.

This table provides some basic data for a number of common rectifiers.

| Type | PIV | Current | Max V. Drop |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 1N4001 | 50 V | 1A | 1.1 V |
| 1N4002 | 100 V | 1A | 1.1 V |
| 1N4003 | 200 V | 1 A | 1.1 V |
| 1N4004 | 400 V | 1A | 1.1 V |
| 1N4005 | 600 V | 1A | 1.1 V |
| 1N4006 | 800 V | 1A | 1.1 V |
| 1N4007 | 1000 V | 1 A | 1.1 V |
| 1N5400 | 50 V | 3 A | 1.1 V |
| 1N5401 | 100 V | 3 A | 1.1 V |
| 1N5402 | 200 V | 3 A | 1.1 V |
| 1N5404 | 400 V | 3 A | 1.1 V |
| 1N5406 | 600 V | 3 A | 1.1 V |
| 1N5407 | 800 V | 3 A | 1.1 V |
| 1N5408 | 1000 V | 3 A | 1.1 V |
| MR751 | 100 V | 6A | 1.1 V |
| MR752 | 200 V | 6A | 1.1 V |
| MR754 | 400 V | 6A | 1.1 V |
| MR756 | 600 V | 6A | 1.1 V |
| MR78 | 800 V | 6A | 1.1 V |
| P600A | 50 V | 6A | 0.9 V |
| P600D | 200 V | 6A | 0.9 V |
| P600J | 600 V | 6A | 0.9 V |
| R250S | 800 V | 6A | 1.1 V |
| 1N5820 | 20 V | 3A | 0.525 V |
| 1N5822 | 40 V | 3A | 0.525 V |
| MBR1090 | 90 V | 10A | 0.57 V |

The voltage drop is at the maximum rated current of the device, and is a worse case figure not a typical one. The 1N5820, 1N5822, and MBR 1090 are Schottky rectifiers. In addition to their low voltage drops they also have fast switching times, making them well suited to operation in switch mode power supplies. Figure 1.31 provides leadout details for a range of rectifiers, including some obsolete types which might be encountered when servicing older equipment.


Fig.1.31 Leadout details for most rectifiers, old and new

Bridge rectifiers are sometimes sold on the basis of a particular voltage and current rating, rather than under a certain type number. The retailer's catalogue should then provide brief data, including leadout details. This table provides basic data for a few bridge rectifiers that are available under a specific type number.

| Type | PIV | Current | V. Drop | Load C Max |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| W005 | 50 V | 1.5 A | 2.2 V | $5000 \mu$ |
| W01 | 100 V | 1.5 A | 2.2 V | $2500 \mu$ |
| W02 | 200 V | 1.5 A | 2.2 V | $1250 \mu$ |
| W04 | 400 V | 1.5 A | 2.2 V | $625 \mu$ |
| PW01 | 100 V | 6A | 2.6 V (@ 3A) | $5000 \mu$ |
| PW04 | 400 V | 6A | 2.6 V (@ 3A) | $800 \mu$ |

Note that in this case the voltage drop rating is the voltage drop through the complete bridge circuit, not the voltage drop per individual rectifier. The load capacitance rating is effectively the highest value smoothing capacitance that can safely be used. There is not usually any difficulty in identifying the leadout wires of bridge rectifiers. The component is normally marked "AC" or " ~ " to indicate the leads that connect to the a.c. input signal, and " + " and " - " to identify the d.c. output terminals.

## Smoothing Capacitor

The correct value for the smoothing capacitor depends on the maximum output current, and the maximum acceptable ripple voltage on the output. Obtaining very low values of ripple using a large smoothing capacitor is not a practical proposition, except at very low output currents. At higher currents the required capacitance value would be impractically large. Where a low ripple supply is required it is a matter of using a voltage regulator to electronically smooth the output from an unregulated supply. In this way it is possible to obtain an output noise level of well under one millivolt peak-to-peak, even though the ripple level on the unregulated supply might be more than a thousand times higher than this. It is not advisable to have a very high level of ripple on the unregulated supply even if a regulator circuit will be used. With a few volts of
ripple it would be almost certain that the input voltage to the regulator would drop below the minimum acceptable level, the drop-out voltage, on negative ripple peaks.

The voltage rating of the smoothing capacitor must be at least equal to the unloaded d.c. output voltage of the supply. It is advisable to be generous with the voltage rating of the smoothing capacitor, since a breakdown in this component could result in it drawing a very high current. This could in turn result in it literally exploding! I would recommend using a component that has a voltage rating at least double the loaded output voltage of the supply. For a loaded output of about 12 volts a 25 volt capacitor would therefore be used.

The ripple current rating of capacitors is a factor that tends to be overlooked. There is a limit to the maximum current that a capacitor can have flowing in and out as it smooths the supply. As one would expect, this ripple current rating tends to be low for small capacitors, and high for high value types. Although a large amount of ripple on the supply's output might be perfectly acceptable, the capacitor selected might not have a high enough ripple current rating. A low voltage $470 \mu$ component, for example, typically has a ripple current rating of under 500 milliamps. Although a value of $470 \mu$ might give perfectly adequate smoothing, it might be necessary to settle for a much higher value in order to achieve a high enough ripple current rating. For an output current of 1 amp a value of at least $1000 \mu$ would be required, and a value of $2200 \mu$ would be a safer option.

As a general "rule of thumb", it is necessary to have a smoothing capacitance of at least $1 \mu$ per milliamp of output current, and preferably $2.2 \mu$ per milliamp of output current. It would often be advantageous to have a very high value smoothing capacitor. However, values of more than about $10000 \mu$ are difficult to obtain, even in low voltage types. Capacitors having voltage ratings of about 40 volts or more are difficult to obtain in values of more than about $4700 \mu$. The very high value capacitors that can be obtained tend to be both bulky and expensive. This often forces a compromise, with reduced smoothing being used, together with a higher loaded input voltage to the regulator.

Practical experience suggests that good results will be
obtained if the smoothing capacitor has a value equal to at least $2 \mu$ per milliamp of output current, and the loaded voltage across the smoothing capacitor is at least $25 \%$ higher than the drop-out voltage of the of the regulator.

## Voltage Regulators

For most purposes ordinary three terminal monolithic voltage regulators are the most convenient type. They are available in a range of popular output voltages, in both positive and negative versions. They are used in the simple circuit configuration of Figure 1.32. There is little that is problematic when using these regulators, as they are very stable and reliable. However, to guarantee stability the two decoupling capacitors $(\mathrm{Cl}$ and C 2 ) must be positioned close to the regulator chip. C 1 and C 2 should be ceramic capacitors, or another type that works well at high frequencies. The circuit diagram of Figure 1.32 is for positive regulator, but for a negative supply it is merely necessary to use a 79** series regulator instead of a 78** type. Figure 1.33 shows the circuit diagram for a negative voltage regulator.

Performance figures vary somewhat from one device in the series to another, but in general the typical line regulation



Fig.1.33 The negative supply version of Fig.1.32
is better than $0.1 \%$, and load regulation is about $0.25 \%$. The ripple rejection is about 70 dB , and the output noise voltage is in the region of 75 microvolts. These figures are more than adequate for most purposes, and the performance of these components is remarkably good considering their very low cost.

All devices in the series feature output overload protection in the form of foldback current limiting. This simply means that in the event of a severe output overload, the output current is not merely prevented from exceeding a figure slightly above the maximum output current of the regulator. Beyond the overload point, attempts to increase the loading on the output actually result in a reduction in the output current. The short circuit output current is generally about $40 \%$ of the component's maximum output current rating.

Foldback current limiting reduces the risk of damage to components in the circuit supplied via the regulator, and it also helps to reduce dissipation in the regulator itself. The dissipation in the regulator could otherwise be substantially higher than its normal operating level. The drop-out voltage is two volts for five volt regulators, and 2.5 volts for other types. In other words, the regulator will work properly provided the input voltage is always at least two or 2.5 volts more than the
output voltage.
A variety of output voltages are available, and most can be obtained in negative as well as positive versions. They are also available with several output current ratings. These tables should aid the selection of a suitable device for a given application.

| 100mA Types |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Voltage | Positive | Negative |
| 5 | $\mu$ A78L05 | $\mu$ A79L05 |
| 8 | $\mu$ A78L08 | - |
| 12 | $\mu$ A78L12 | $\mu$ A79L12 |
| 15 | $\mu$ A78L15 | $\mu$ A79L15 |
| 24 | $\mu \mathrm{~A} 78 \mathrm{~L} 24$ | $\mu$ A79L24 |

500 mA Types

Voltage
5
12
15
24
1A Types
Voltage

5
6
8
12

18
24
2A Types
5
12
15
24

6

2

## 15



5

15

Positive Negative
$\mu \mathrm{A} 78 \mathrm{M} 05$
$\mu \mathrm{A} 78 \mathrm{M} 12$
$\mu \mathrm{A} 78 \mathrm{M} 15$
$\mu \mathrm{A} 78 \mathrm{M} 24$
$\mu \mathrm{A} 79 \mathrm{M} 05$
$\mu \mathrm{A} 79 \mathrm{M} 12$
$\mu \mathrm{A} 79 \mathrm{M} 15$
$\mu \mathrm{A} 79 \mathrm{M} 24$

Positive
$\mu \mathrm{A} 7805$
$\mu \mathrm{A} 7806$
$\mu \mathrm{A} 7808$
$\mu \mathrm{A} 7812$
$\mu \mathrm{A} 7815$
$\mu \mathrm{A} 7818$
$\mu \mathrm{A} 7824$

Positive
$\mu \mathrm{A} 78 \mathrm{~S} 05$
$\mu \mathrm{A} 78 \mathrm{~S} 12$
$\mu \mathrm{A} 78 \mathrm{~S} 15$
$\mu \mathrm{A} 78 \mathrm{~S} 24$

Negative нA7905
$\mu \mathrm{A} 7908$
$\mu \mathrm{A} 7912$
$\mu \mathrm{A} 7915$
$\mu \mathrm{A} 7924$

Leadout details for a range of three terminal monolithic voltage regulators are provided in Figure 1.34.


## Variable Voltage

Figure 1.35 shows the circuit diagram for a voltage regulator based on an LM317* series three terminal variable regulator. These are used in much the same way as normal 78** series monolithic voltage regulators, but two discrete resistors enable a wide range of output voltages to be obtained. The basic action of the circuit is to stabilise the output potential at 1.2 volts above the potential at the "Adjust" terminal. R1 and R2 form a potential divider, and their purpose is to take the voltage at the "Adjust" input to 1.2 volts less than the required output voltage.

There is a slight flaw in this setup in that any change in the current consumption of IC1 itself will result in the voltage developed across R1 changing. This would, in turn, alter the output voltage. In practice this is not a major problem because the LM317* series of regulators are designed to operate at a supply current of only about 50 microamps. This is insignifi-


Fig.1.35 Using a three terminal variable voltage regulator
cant when compared to the recommended current of 5 milliamps through the potential divider circuit.

Determining the correct value for R1 is quite easy. The output voltage is equal to 1 volt for every 200 ohms of resistance through R1 and R2. Therefore, simply deducting 1.2 from the required output voltage and then multiplying this value by 200 will give the correct value for R1. Suppose that an output potential of 10 volts is required. Deducting 1.2 volts from 10 volts gives an answer of 8.8 volts. Multiplying 8.8 by 200 gives a value of 1760 ohms, or 1.76 k in other words. The nearest preferred value of 1.8 k would be used, and would provide a typical output voltage of 10.2 volts. R1 must be a preset resistor in applications that require a very accurate supply voltage. The output potential can then be trimmed to precisely the required figure.

There are four versions of the LM317, and the main differences between them are detailed in this table. This also gives details of the LM338K, which is effectively a higher current version of the LM317K.

| Device | Max. Output | Drop-Out V | Case | Max. Power |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| LM317L | 100 mA | 1.8 V | TO92 | 0.625 W |
| LM317M | 500 mA | 1.8 V | TO220 | 12 W |
| LM317T | 1.5 A | 2.25 V | TO220 | 15 W |
| LM317K | 1.5 A | 2.5 V | TO3 | 20 W |
| LM338K | 5 A | 2.9 V | TO3 | - |

The drop-out voltage is the minimum acceptable voltage drop from the input to the output of the device. In other words, the input voltage must always be higher than the output voltage by an amount which is equal to or higher than the drop-out voltage. Otherwise the output voltage will fall below its correct level. Also, the electronic smoothing provided by the device will be largely lost. With the exception of the LM338K, the output voltage range for all versions is 1.2 to 37 volts, and the maximum input voltage 40 volts. The input voltage range of the LM 338 K is 4 to 35 V , and its output voltage range is 1.2 to 32 volts. The load and line regulation figures are very good at $0.1 \%$ and $0.01 \%$ respectively for all four types. The line and load regulation figures for the LM338K are $0.005 \%$ and $0.1 \%$ respectively. Ripple rejection is 80 dB ( 75 dB for the LM338K), and the output noise voltage is typically about 150 microvolts for all five devices.

There are negative supply versions of most of the LM317* series, and these are used in essentially the same manner as the LM317* devices. These are the LM337* devices. Figure 1.36 shows the circuit diagram for a three terminal negative supply regulator.

Figure 1.37 provides leadout details for a range of three terminal adjustable voltage regulators.

## Zeners

Zener diodes seem to be little used in modern electronic circuits, and have been largely supplanted by integrated circuit voltage regulators. A basic zener stabiliser is a shunt type, and as such it is only suitable for low power applications. In normal use a zener diode would therefore be used to stabilise the supply to a critical part of the circuit, or to provide a stabilised bias voltage to a critical section of the circuit. With many circuits now being powered via highly stable monolithic voltage


Fig.1.36 The circuit for an adjustable negative supply regulator
regulators, accurate operation of the circuit is often guaranteed without the need for any built-in voltage regulators.

I suppose that zener diodes still have their uses, but it is probably better to use alternatives wherever possible. Zener diodes tend to be less accurate than modern alternatives, and generally provide inferior regulation. Low voltage types having zener voltages of about 6.8 volts or less often provide rather poor regulation.

The circuit diagram for a basic zener regulator is shown in Figure 1.38. C 1 is a decoupling capacitor, and its main function is actually to filter out the relatively high noise level produced across a zener diode. The value of load resistor R1 is important as it must always provide an adequate current flow to the output, but it must not be so low in value that large amounts of power are wasted in the zener diode, possibly causing it to burn out.

The basic action of the circuit is for the zener diode to conduct more heavily if the load current decreases, or less heavily if the load current increases. This keeps the overall current

drain more or less constant, and avoids variations in the output potential due to changes in loading. If the input voltage should increase or decrease for some reason, D1 conducts more or less heavily so that the voltage drop through R1 changes by virtually the same amount. This keeps the output voltage almost unchanged.

In order to calculate the correct value for R 1 it is necessary to know the minimum input voltage, the maximum output current, and the output voltage. The output voltage is deducted from the minimum input voltage to give the minimum voltage across R1. For the circuit to stand any chance of working reasonably well this should be at least one volt, and preferably two or three volts. There must always be at least a small current flow through D1 for it to provide a stabilising action, and this current must be added to the output current. For small zener diodes a current of two or three milliamps is usually sufficient, but most types provide optimum efficiency at a current of


Fig.1.38 A basic zener shunt stabiliser circuit
around five milliamps. The value for R 1 is equal to the minimum voltage across this component divided by the total output current (including the zener current).

As a simple example, assume that the minimum input potential will be 8 volts, that the output voltage is 6.2 volts, and that the maximum output current is 7.5 milliamps. This gives a minimum voltage across R 1 of 1.8 volts ( $8 \mathrm{~V}-6.2 \mathrm{~V}$ equals 1.8 V ). Allowing 2.5 milliamps for the minimum zener current, this gives a total output current of 10 milliamps, or 0.01 amps in other words. The correct value for R1 is therefore equal to 1.8 volts divided by 0.01 amps , which gives an answer of 180 ohms. This is a preferred value, but in most cases the calculated value will not precisely coincide with a preferred value. It is then a matter of using the nearest preferred value below the calculated figure.

It is as well to calculate the power dissipated by D1 and R1 under worst case conditions to ensure that these will not be excessive for ordinary 250 mW and 400 mW components. If necessary, higher power components can then be substituted. However, for medium and high power applications some form
of series regulator is generally much more satisfactory.
At one time there were several ranges of zener diodes that were readily available. These covered a very wide range of voltages. These days there are only two ranges of zener diodes stocked by most suppliers, and the 400 mW type is now less widely available than was once the case. Details of both ranges are provided in this table.

| Voltage | 400 mW | 1.3W |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 2.7 V | BZY88C2V7 | - |
| 3 V | BZY88C3V0 | - |
| 3.3 V | BZY88C3V3 | BZX61C3V3 |
| 3.6 V | BZY88C3V6 | BZX61C3V6 |
| 3.9 V | BZY88C3V9 | BZX61C3V9 |
| 4.3 V | BZY88C4V3 | BZX61C4V3 |
| 4.7V | BZY88C4V7 | BZX61C4V7 |
| 5.1 V | BZY88C5V1 | BZX61C5V1 |
| 5.6 V | BZY88C5V6 | BZX61C5V6 |
| 6.2 V | BZY88C6V2 | BZX61C6V2 |
| 6.8 V | BZY88C6V8 | BZX61C6V8 |
| 7.5V | BZY88C7V5 | BZX61C7V5 |
| 8.2 V | BZY88C8V2 | BZX61C8V2 |
| 9.1 V | BZY88V9V1 | BZX61C9V1 |
| 10 V | BZY88C10V | BZX61C10V |
| 11 V | BZY88Cl1V | BZX61C11V |
| 12 V | BZY88C12V | BZX61C12V |
| 13V | BZY88C13V | BZX61C13V |
| 15V | BZY88C15V | BZX61C15V |
| 16V | BZY88C16V | BZX61C16V |
| 18 V | BZY88C18V | BZX61C18V |
| 20 V | BZY88C20V | BZX61C20V |
| 24 V | BZY88C24V | BZX61C24V |
| 27 V | BZY88C27V | BZX61C27V |
| 30 V | BZY88C30V | BZX61C30V |
| 33 V | BZY88C33V | BZX61C33V |
| 36 V | - | BZX61C36V |
| 39 V | - | BZX61C39V |
| 43 V | - | BZX61C43V |
| 47V | - | BZX6147V |

## Current Regulators

In some applications it is a stabilised current flow rather than a regulated voltage that is required. There are numerous constant current generator configurations in common use, but for most purposes the very basic configuration of Figure 1.39 will suffice. There are actually two circuits here, but they use what is essentially the same configuration. The circuit on the left uses an n.p.n. transistor and it acts as a current sink. The one on the right is based on a p.n.p: transistor and it acts as a current source. Operation of this type of constant current generator is very straightforward. Here we will consider the current source, but the current sink circuit operates in basically the same fashion.

R1 and the two diodes provide a base voltage to TR1 which is stabilised about 1.3 volts below the positive supply potential. This gives about 0.65 volts or so across emitter resistor R2, and this sets a certain emitter current. With a high gain transistor such as the BC557 specified for TR1, there is little difference between the emitter and collector currents. This gives a current flow in the output circuit that is virtually equal to the emitter current. The required output current can therefore be set by giving R2 a suitable value.

Of course, the circuit only works properly if there is a low enough load resistance across the output. The higher the supply voltage, the higher the load resistance that the circuit can tolerate before it can not drive a high enough current through the load. The maximum output voltage is about 1 volt less than the supply voltage. The maximum supply voltage for the circuit is 30 volts, which is imposed by the collector to emitter voltage rating of the BC557. Using a higher voltage transistor enables correspondingly higher supply voltages to be used, and higher output voltages to be achieved. Practically any silicon p.n.p. transistor can be used in the TR1 position, but the current gain of the device should be about 100 or more.

Calculating the value for $\mathbf{R} 2$ is very simple. Dividing 0.65 by the required output current gives the value for R2. For example, suppose an output current of 10 milliamps ( 0.01 amps ) is required. Dividing 0.65 by 0.01 gives a value of 65 ohms for R2. In practice the nearest preferred value of 68 ohms would have to be used. This gives a typical output current of


Fig.1.39 A constant current sink (left) and current source (right)
0.96 milliamps. If the output current must be very accurate it is necessary to use a preset resistor for R 2 . The preset can then be adjusted for precisely the required output current. These circuits will work with output currents from about one microamp to about 50 milliamps, but at high output currents make sure that the dissipation in TR1 is kept within the operating limits of the particular device used.


In the circuit of Figure 1.40 a constant current generator integrated circuit is used as the basis of the circuit. The LM334Z has an operating current range of 1 microamp to 10 milliamps, and will operate over a one to 40 volt supply range. Current regulation is $0.02 \%$ per volt. The only discrete component is R1, and this sets the output current. The value required for a given current is calculated by dividing 0.0677 by the required output current. For an output current of (say) 5 milliamps a value of 13.54 ohms would be required. The nearest preferred value is 13 ohms, which would provide an actual output current of about 5.2 milliamps. Again, a preset resistor must be used if it is necessary to set the output current very

accurately. Figure 1.41 shows leadout details for the LM334Z.
The circuits of Figure 1.39 and 1.40 are not temperature compensated, and will produce slightly reduced output currents with increased ambient temperature. The basic LM334Z current generator suffers from a similar problem. The modified arrangement of Figure 1.42 works in the same basic fashion as the original current sink and source circuits, but gives better temperature stabilisation. However, it requires a well stabilised supply if it is to function well. Temperature compensation is achieved by using just a single diode in the base circuit of TR 1 . Any change in the base - emitter voltage of TR1 due to a temperature change will produce a similar change in voltage across D1. This leaves the voltage across emitter resistor R3 largely unchanged, and the output current therefore remains virtually the same as well.

Other supply voltages can be used provided the value of R1 (R2 in the current source) is changed to suit, and the supply voltage is kept between 5 and 30 volts. The value of R1 (in kilohms) should be about 1.4 less than the supply potential in volts (e.g. 4 k 7 for a 6 volt supply).


Fig.1.42 Temperature compensated current sink and source circuits

## Chapter 2

## CODES, ETC.

Marking component values using colour codes may seem to be an unnecessary complication, but there are advantages to this method of marking. Many modern components are extremely small, and values marked on them using letters and numbers would require a character height of under a millimetre. Few people could read the values reliably (if at all) without the aid of a magnifier. Coloured bands or spots, even if very small, are relatively easy to read.

Another problem with using minute lettering is that only minor damage is sufficient to render the value completely illegible. Even with severe wear, the coloured bands of a resistor colour code can usually be read with little difficulty. For the experienced user colour codes have a further advantage. Most values can be recognised "on sight", and there is no need to do any calculating of values. This makes it easy to pick out a component of the required value from a box of assorted values. The same is not true if the values are simply marked using letters and numbers. It is then necessary to read the values of the components, one-by-one, until you find one having the correct value.

## Resistor Codes

At present the only large scale use of colour codes is for marking the values and tolerance ratings of resistors. These codes do crop up on a few other types of component though, such as capacitors and inductors. Here we will consider all three types of component, starting with resistors.

The most common form of resistor colour coding is the four band variety. Details of this method are shown in Figure 2.1. The first task with any resistor colour code is to identify the first band in the code. In the past the first band was the one nearest to one end of the body. This method does not seem to be reliable when applied to modern resistors, and it may actually be the fourth band that is closest to one end of the body. Fortunately there is a much more reliable method, which is


Fig.2.1 The standard four band resistor colour coding
based on the spacing between bands. The first, second, and third bands should be spaced quite closely, with the fourth band well separated from this main group. With many practical resistors the fourth band is either gold or silver in colour, which is not a colour that is used for band one. The correct reading order for the bands is then immediately obvious.

This table shows the significance of each colour in each of the four bands.

| COLOUR | BAND 1 | BAND 2 | BAND 3 | BAND 4 |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Black | 0 | 0 | $\times 1$ | - |
| Brown | 1 | 1 | $\times 10$ | $1 \%$ |
| Red | 2 | 2 | $\times 100$ | $2 \%$ |
| Orange | 3 | 3 | $\times 1000$ | - |
| Yellow | 4 | 4 | $\times 10000$ | - |
| Green | 5 | 5 | $\times 100000$ | $0.5 \%$ |
| Blue | 6 | 6 | $\times 1000000$ | $0.25 \%$ |
| Violet | 7 | 7 | - | $0.1 \%$ |
| Grey | 8 | 8 | - | - |
| White | 9 | 9 | - | - |
| Gold | - | - | $\times 0.1$ | $5 \%$ |
| Silver | - | - | $\times 0.01$ | $10 \%$ |
| None | - | - | - | $20 \%$ |

If we take a couple of examples to demonstrate how the system operates, a resistor with the colour coding brown - black orange - gold would have a value of 10 k , and a tolerance of plus and minus $5 \%$. The brown band indicates that the first digit of the value is " 1 ", while the black band indicates that the second digit is " 0 ". This gives " 10 ", which is multiplied by 1000 , as indicated by the orange third band. 10 multiplied by 1000 is obviously 10000 , which is the value in ohms. A value as high as this would more normally be expressed in kilohms, which gives a value of 10 k .

A convenient way of handling the multiplier is to take its band one value, and then add that many zeros to the first two digits. In this example the multiplier is orange, which indicates a value of three if it occurs as the first band. Adding three zeros to the first two digits of the value (" 10 " plus " 000 ") again gives a value of 10000 ohms, or 10 k . This simple dodge does not work properly if the third band is silver or gold, as these colours are not used for band one.

The fourth band is gold, and this indicates a tolerance of plus and minus $5 \%$. In other words, the actual value of the component is within five percent of its marked value. In our 10k example, this means that the real value of the component will be between 9.5 k and 10.5 k .

As an example of a low value, consider the code red - red gold - gold. The first two digits of the value are clearly " 2 " and " 2 ". The third band is gold, which indicates that multiplication by 0.1 is required. Multiplying 22 by 0.1 obviously gives a value of 2.2 ohms. The fourth band is gold, which again indicates a tolerance of plus and minus five percent.

## Five Band Codes

The four band method of coding is satisfactory for values in the normal E12 and E24 series of preferred values, but is unable to accommodate some of the odd values sometimes used in industrial electronics. A five band coding is used for these awkward values, and resistors supplied to amateur users are sometimes marked with these five band codes. Figure 2.2 shows the way in which this method of five band coding operates, and it has clear similarities with the four band method. In fact the first two and last two bands have the same functions as the bands

in the normal four colour system. An extra band is grafted into the middle of the code in order to permit values to be marked more precisely.

If we take a simple example, a coding of red - white green - red - brown would indicate a value of 29.5 k and a tolerance of plus and minus one percent. The first three bands give the first three digits of the value, which in this case are " 295 ". The fourth band is the multiplier, and a red band indicates that the first three digits must be multiplied by 100 . This gives a total value of 29500 ohms ( 295 multiplied by 100 equals 29500), or 29.5 k in other words. The fifth band is brown, which indicates a tolerance of plus and minus one percent.

As component retailers only sell resistors which have normal preferred values, the extra band does not really fulfil any useful purpose as far as amateur users are concerned. Any resistors you buy which use this method of coding will almost certainly have a black third band. For example, a 39k two percent tolerance resistor would have the colour code orange white - black - red - red. You can therefore calculate the value by ignoring the third band, and using a multiplier ten times higher than indicated by the fourth band.


Fig.2.3 An alternative five band colour code

There is an alternative form of five band resistor code, and details of this code are provided in Figure 2.3. Having two different five band codes is obviously a bit unfortunate, and it is essential to look carefully at any five band code in order to ascertain which particular type it is. If in doubt, the value of the resistor can only be determined for certain by measuring it using a multimeter.

This second five band coding is very straightforward, and is essentially the same as the normal fou: band variety. The first four bands indicate the value and tolerance rating using the standard four band method of coding. The fifth band indicates the temperature coefficient of the component. This is something that is not normally of any great importance, and a components list is unlikely to specify this parameter. Anyway, for the record, this is a list of the colours and their respective temperature coefficients.

| Colour | Temp. Co. (ppm/degree C) |
| :--- | :---: |
| Black | 200 |
| Brown | 100 |
| Red | 50 |
| Orange | 25 |
| Yellow | 15 |

$$
\text { Violet } \quad 5
$$

Grey 1

## Old Codes

The method of coding shown in Figure 2.4 is now well and truly obsolete, and you are unlikely to be supplied with any new components that use it. However, it you are into restoring old equipment of any kind it is a system you are quite likely to encounter, particularly on higher power resistors. It is essentially the same as the standard four band type, but the first band of the code is omitted. Instead, the first digit of the value is indicated by the body colour of the component.

Figure 2.5 provides details of another obsolete form of resistor colour coding. As far as I am aware, this method was only used on resistors having power ratings of a few watts of more. Again, you are not likely to be sold new components which have this method of colour coding, but resistors of this type are quite likely to be encountered by anyone undertaking repair or restoration work on old equipment. Also, resistors having old methods of coding sometimes turn up in bargain packs of components. The value is indicated in a fashion which is based on the normal four band method of coding. No tolerance rating is indicated by this method of coding.

It has to be pointed out that not all resistors have their values marked using a colour code. This system is used for the vast majority of small resistors, but is little used for larger types having power ratings of more than about 2 watts. The value is generally marked on larger resistors in the same form that the value would be printed on a circuit diagram. For example, values of 2.2 k and 0.33 ohms would be marked as " 2 k 2 " and "0R33" respectively. The tolerance is sometimes marked using a code letter, as detailed in the table shown on page 70.


Fig.2.4 An obsolete method of three band coding


Fig.2.5 An obsolete method of coding which was used on high power resistors

| Code Letter | Tolerance |
| :---: | :---: |
| F | $1 \%$ |
| G | $2 \%$ |
| H | $2.5 \%$ |
| J | $5 \%$ |
| K | $10 \%$ |
| M | $20 \%$ |

## Potentiometers

Potentiometers and preset resistors normally have the value marked in normal circuit diagram form, such as " 4 k 7 " and " 220 k ". In the case of potentiometers they are also marked "log" or "lin" to indicate whether they are logarithmic or linear types. Some potentiometers are marked "A" or "B", which can be in addition to or instead of the "log" and "lin" markings. " A " and " B " markings respectively indicate linear and logarithmic components. Preset resistors do not normally have any form of marking to indicate whether they are logarithmic or linear, but only linear types are generally available. Tolerances are not normally marked on potentiometers or presets, but the tolerance is normally $20 \%$ in both cases.

Colour codes are occasionally used to indicate the values of preset resistors. This generally works using what is basically the standard resistor code method, but with the value indicated by three coloured dots rather than by three bands. There is no fourth dot to indicate the tolerance.

## Inductors

Large inductors normally have their values marked using letters and figures, but it is quite common for small high frequency inductors (r.f. chokes) to have the value marked using a four band colour code. This coding is actually the same as the standard four band resistor type, giving both a value and a tolerance rating. However, the value is in nanohenries rather than ohms. Divide the value by 1000 if an answer in microhenries is required.

## Capacitors

Some years ago it was quite common for capacitors to be marked with colour codes, but relatively few capacitors are
colour coded these days. At one time virtually all the C280 style plastic foil capacitors were colour coded, but this method of value marking is one that is only encountered infrequently at present. Figure 2.6 shows how the C280 method of coding operates. Once again, the method used is firmly based on the standard four band resistor coding. The first three bands indicate the value in normal resistor fashion, but the value is in picofarads. To convert this into a value nanofarads it is merely necessary to divide by 1000 . Divide the marked value by 1000000 if a value in microfarads is required.

The fourth band indicates the tolerance, but the colour coding used is different to the resistor equivalent. The fifth band shows the maximum working voltage of the component. Details of the fourth and fifth band colour coding is provided in this table.


Fig.2.6 C280 method of coding capacitors

| Colour | Band 4 | Band 5 |
| :--- | :---: | :---: |
| Black | $20 \%$ | - |
| White | $10 \%$ | - |
| Green | $5 \%$ | - |


| Orange | $2.5 \%$ | - |
| :--- | :--- | :---: |
| Red | $2 \%$ | 250 V |
| Brown | $1 \%$ | - |
| Yellow | - | 400 V |

Most of the C280 style capacitors you obtain are likely to be 250 volt types, but 400 volt types are sold by some retailers. Values of 220 n or less generally have a tolerance of 20 percent, with higher values having a tolerance of 10 percent. A component having the colour code orange - orange - yellow - white - red would have a value of $330 \mathrm{n}(330000 \mathrm{p}$ ), a tolerance of 10 percent, and a maximum operating voltage of 250 volts.

## Tantalum Bead

At one time practically all tantalum bead capacitors carried colour codes, but most modern components of this type now simply have the value and voltage marked using alphanumeric characters. There are still some colour coded tantalum components in circulation though, and these use the method of colour coding detailed in Figure 2.7. Note that the coloured spot is the multiplier colour, and also enables the polarity of the component to be determined. The first two bands provide the first two digits of the value in standard resistor coding fashion. The spot indicates the multiplication factor, and the third band shows the component's maximum operating voltage. Details of the colour coding for the spot and band three are provided in this table.

| Colour | Spot <br> Black | $\times 1$ |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Brown | $\times 10$ | 10 V |
| Red | $\times 100$ | - |
| Yellow | - | 6.3 V |
| Green | - | 16 V |
| Blue | - | 20 V |
| Grey | $\times 0.01$ | 25 V |
| White | $\times 0.1$ | 25 V |
| Pink | - | 3 V |

The multiplier coding is much the same as for resistor coding, but most multiplier values are unused because these capacitors are not manufactured in high enough values. Note that, unlike the C280 system, the value is in microfarads and not picofarads.

## Ceramic Capacitors

Colour coding on ceramic capacitors was never universal, and it is now extremely rare. Figure 2.8 shows two methods of colour coding for components of this type, but except when dealing with older equipment, you are unlikely to encounter either of them. Coloured spots rather than bands are used, but in other respects the system operates in the same fashion as standard four band resistor colour coding. The values are in picofarads incidentally.


## Other Codes

Although most capacitors are now marked with their values, etc. using alpha-numeric characters, the values are sometimes
in slightly cryptic forms. Ceramic and certain other capacitors are often marked with a three figure code, such as " 104 ". The first two figures are the first two digits of the value, and the third digit is the multiplier. Simply add the number of zeros indicated by the third digit. In our example the first two digits are " 10 ", and four zeros must be added to them. This gives a total value of 100000 picofarads, which is the same as 100 nanofarads, or 0.1 microfarads.

The tolerance is sometimes marked using a code letter. This operates using the method of resistor coding that was described previously (e.g. " H " indicates a tolerance of 2.5 percent).


Ceramic plate capacitors often have rather odd looking value markings. The low values are usually easy to decipher, with markings such as " 33 p " and " 2 p 2 ". It is values from 100 p to 820 p that can look a little strange. Value markings such as " nl " and " n 47 " are often encountered. These value markings are in what is basically just the normal circuit diagram form, but with the leading zero omitted. Thus, a capacitor marked " n 33 " has a value of 0.33 n , or 330 p in other words.

## Preferred Values

Resistors, capacitors, and inductors are manufactured in a range of standard values. There are actually two ranges of values in common use, called the "E12" and "E24" series. These are basically the same, but the "E24" series has some extra values, as can be seen from this list, which shows both series of values.

EI2
$1.0 \quad 1.0$
$-\quad 1.1$
$1.2 \quad 1.2$

- 1.3
$1.5 \quad 1.5$
- 1.6
$1.8 \quad 1.8$
- 2.0
$2.2 \quad 2.2$
- 2.4
$2.7 \quad 2.7$
- 3.0
$3.3 \quad 3.3$
- 3.6
$3.9 \quad 3.9$
- 4.3
$4.7 \quad 4.7$
- 5.1
$5.6 \quad 5.6$
- 

6.2
$6.8 \quad 6.8$
8.2
7.5
$8.2 \quad 8.2$
-
9.1

Although this list would tend to suggest that only values from 1 ohm to 9.1 ohms (or whatever) are available, the same values but in different decades are also available. For example, values such as 100 ohms, 110 ohms, 120 ohms, 130 ohms, etc., can be obtained. The highest resistance value available from most component retailers is 10 megohms, but higher value resistors are manufactured. At the other end of the range there are components having values in the sub one ohm decades, such as 0.1 ohms, 0.11 ohms, 0.12 ohms, 0.13 ohms, etc. Most electronic component retailers only supply values down to one ohm, but some retailers stock lower values, especially in the higher power ratings. However, the range of values available may be rather limited. Capacitors are available over a range of values from about 1 p to around $22000 \mu$. Inductors are available in values from about $0.22 \mu \mathrm{H}$ to around 10 H .

## Chapter 3

## OPERATIONAL AMPLIFIERS

Operational amplifiers are undoubtedly the most popular form of linear integrated circuit at present, and seem likely to remain so for many years to come. They were originally designed for use in analogue computers where they performed mathematical operations. It is from this that the "operational" part of the name is derived. These days analogue computers are virtually extinct, but operational amplifiers live on in a wide range of applications including test gear, audio equipment, motor control, and robotics.

A slightly unusual aspect of these components is their power supply requirements. They are designed for use with dual balanced supplies that would normally be about plus and minus 12 to 15 volts. The earth rail is a central 0 volt type. The reason for using dual supplies is that in analogue computing applications it is essential for the amplifier to be able to handle positive and negative output voltages. The output voltage represents the answer to a calculation, and it is essential that positive and negative quantities can both be represented.

It is still quite common for circuits using these devices to have dual supply rails, even though they are little used in analogue computing. There can be advantages to using dual supply rails, and they remain essential in some d.c. applications. However, it is probable that the majority of operational amplifier based circuits now use a single supply. This is perfectly satisfactory in audio and other a.c. applications where normal biasing techniques can be used to permit single supply operation. It is also permissible in d.c. applications where negative output voltages are not required, but only if the operational amplifiers used are intended for single supply use. The LM324N, LM1458C, CA3130E and CA3140E are probably the best known devices of this type.

## Inverting Mode

An operational amplifier has two inputs, which are the inverting (-) and non-inverting (+) inputs. It is a form of differential

amplifier, with the output voltage reflecting the difference between the two input voltages. However, in normal use operational amplifiers are in circuits that provide straightforward amplification of a single input signal. For general amplification purposes operational amplifiers are an attractive choice as they enable the voltage gain and input impedance to be set very accurately using some fundamental mathematics. Operational amplifiers can be used in two basic amplifying modes, which are the inverting and non-inverting types.

Figure 3.1 shows the circuit diagram for an operational amplifier used in the inverting mode. This requires only two resistors to set the voltage gain and input impedance of the circuit. As the name of this mode suggests, the signal is phase shifted by 180 degrees between the input and output of this
circuit. This will often be of no practical consequence, but it is a factor that must be borne in mind when using this configuration in applications where signal phasing is important.

R1 and R3 form the negative feedback network. The input resistance/impedance is equal to the value given to R1. The voltage gain is equal to R3/R1. Thus, in order to obtain a certain combination of input impedance and voltage gain it is merely necessary to give R1 a value which is equal to the required input impedance. R3 is then give a value which is equal to the value of R1 multiplied by the required voltage gain. This is the theory at any rate.

## Gain-Bandwidth

In practice it is necessary to bear in mind that "real world" operational amplifiers do not achieve theoretical perfection. A theoretical operational amplifier has infinite innate voltage gain. The innate voltage gain is termed the "open-loop" voltage gain. The voltage gain of the circuit as a whole is called the "closed-loop" voltage gain. A theoretical operational amplifier also has an infinite bandwidth and no input capacitance.

In general, the voltage gain of an operational amplifier is very high at d.c., and is typically about 200000 times. However, in order to avoid problems with instability the high frequency response of the amplifier is rolled-off at 6 dB per octave. As already pointed out, operational amplifiers were originally designed for use at d.c., and in this context high frequency roll-off generally means attenuating frequencies above about 10 Hz ! The graph of Figure 3.2 shows the open-loop frequency response for the industry standard $\mu \mathrm{A} 741 \mathrm{C}$ operational amplifier. The voltage gain set by the feedback network can only be maintained at frequencies where the required closedloop gain is higher than the open-loop gain.

The unity gain/bandwidth product is an extremely important parameter when using operational amplifiers in a.c. applications. This is the frequency at which the open-loop voltage gain falls to unity, and for the $\mu \mathrm{A} 741 \mathrm{C}$ it is 1 MHz , as can be seen from Figure 3.2. With the usual 6 dB per octave attenuation rate this makes it easy to calculate the bandwidth for various closed-loop voltage gains. It is just a matter of dividing


1000000 by the closed loop voltage gain. For example, at a closed-loop gain of five the uA741C will have a bandwidth of $200 \mathrm{kHz}(1000000 / 5=200000 \mathrm{~Hz}$ or 200 kHz ).

It is apparent from this that normal operational amplifiers are not suitable for applications where both high gain and wide bandwidth are required. More modern types often have significantly higher gain bandwidth products than the $\mu \mathrm{A} 741 \mathrm{C}$, with figüre of around 3 to 5 MHz being typical. A few have gain bandwidth-products as high as 10 MHz , but they are still primarily intended for audio use, offering a gain of 500 at the highest audio frequency of 20 kHz . This compares to a maximum gain of just 50 for the $\mu \mathrm{A} 741 \mathrm{C}$ at the same frequency. There are now a few special types that have gain bandwidth products of around 100 MHz , and which are suitable for use with video signals, etc., but these are relatively expensive. They also need carefully designed component layouts in order
to obtain stable operation.
A combination of high input impedance and even moderate voltage gain is something that is beyond the capabilities of the inverting mode. One problem is that R 3 must have an impractically high value for such a combination. An input impedance of one megohm and a voltage gain of 100 would require a value of 100 M ! The other main problem is that of stray capacitances in the circuit, especially the input capacitance of the operational amplifier itself. The input capacitance is usually only a few picofarads, but can be rather more than this with some f.e.t. input types. Even so, with very high value feedback resistors it is likely that large irregularities in the frequency response will be produced, especially at high frequencies. Where high gain and high impedance are required it is necessary to use a low gain input stage followed by one or two higher gain stages.

It is not essential to include R2, and the non-inverting input of IC1 can be connected direct to the 0 volt earth rail. Including R2 gives improved accuracy with some operational amplifiers, such as the $\mu \mathrm{A} 741 \mathrm{C}$, which have relatively high input currents. With low input current devices, especially f.e.t. input types, including R2 is likely to have little or no apparent effect on accuracy. The correct value for $\mathbf{R} 2$ is given by this formula:

$$
R 2=(R 1 \times R 3) / R 1+R 3
$$

## Non-Inverting Mode

The other form of amplifier is the non-inverting type. The circuit for an amplifier of this type is shown in Figure 3.3. This mode provides zero phase shift between the input and the output. R2 sets the input resistance of the circuit, and this is again equal to the value of the resistor used here. At low frequencies the input impedance will also be virtually equal to the value of R2. At higher frequencies the input capacitance of IC 1 , plus other stray circuit capacitances, will shunt R 2 and reduce the input impedance. It is possible that the input resistance of the amplifier could significantly reduce the input resistance of the circuit if a very high value is used for R2. However, in practice the input resistance of an operational amplifier is extremely high, particularly once feedback has been applied. A f.e.t. input operational amplifier offers a typical


Fig.3.3 The operational amplifier non-inverting mode circuit
input resistance of around one million megohms, and will avoid any significant shunting of R2.

R1 and R3 form the negative feedback network which sets the closed-loop voltage gain of the circuit. The formula for the voltage gain of a non-inverting circuit is slightly different to that for an inverting mode amplifier. The voltage gain is given by this formula:

$$
V \text { gain }=(R 1+R 3) / R 1
$$

Alternatively, the voltage gain can be calculated by dividing R3 by R1, and then adding one to the answer. When selecting suitable values it is a matter of first selecting a suitable value
for R3. This resistor should not be too high in value, or stray capacitances might give problems with peaks and troughs in the frequency response. A very low value would put excessive loading on the output of the amplifier. A theoretical operational amplifier has zero output impedance and can supply an infinite output current. Practical operational amplifiers have quite low output impedances once feedback has been applied, but can usually supply no more than a few milliamps of output current. Values of around 2 k 2 to 10 k are usually satisfactory, and values of up to about 100 k or so are usable if flatness of the high frequency response is not of great importance.

Dividing the value of R3 by one less than the required closed-loop voltage gain then provides the correct value for R 1 . For instance, suppose that a voltage gain of 15 times is required, and the value of R3 has been set at 3 k 3 . Dividing 3300 ohms by 14 gives an answer of 236 ohms. In practice the nearest preferred value of 240 ohms would have to be used, and this would give a typical voltage gain of 14.75 . In most applications this is accurate enough, but in critical circuits either R1 or R3 must be a preset resistor so that the gain can be trimmed to precisely the required figure. For a unity voltage gain buffer amplifier the output is simply connected direct to the inverting input, and R1 and R3 are omitted.

Although the non-inverting mode may seem to offer better prospects for a combination of high gain and high input impedance, matters are not that simple. There is no difficulty in selecting values to give something like a 2.2 megohm input impedance and a voltage gain of 200 . However, such a combination is likely to give problems with instability due to stray feedback. Such a combination of voltage gain and input impedance is possible, but great care are required with the component layout and wiring. It is easier to obtain good stability using a high input impedance buffer stage followed by a separate amplifier to provide the voltage gain.

## Compensation

Most operational amplifiers, including the standard 741 C , are fully internally compensated. This simply means that they have an internal capacitor which provides the all-important high frequency roll-off. The main reason for using this roll-off
is that stray capacitances can result in large phase shifts through the negative feedback circuit at high frequencies. These phase shifts can be large enough to produce oscillation at high frequencies. Surprisingly perhaps, the lower the closed loop voltage gain of the amplifier, the greater the risk of oscillation occurring.

A fully internally compensated operational amplifier can be used at voltage gains of unity or above without oscillation occurring due to positive feedback via the negative feedback circuit. Of course, if fully compensated devices are used in a high gain circuit which has a poorly designed layout, oscillation may still occur because of stray feedback. Provided they are used sensibly though, fully compensated operational amplifiers should remain stable.

For most purposes fully internally compensated devices are entirely satisfactory. However, they are less than ideal when it is necessary to obtain a high level of voltage gain from a single operational amplifier. As pointed out previously, the gain bandwidth product of most operational amplifiers is not particularly great. Using a lesser degree of high frequency roll-off would give a higher gain bandwidth product, but would not result in oscillation provided the amplifier was used at high voltage gains. This is possible using externally compensated operational amplifiers. These have no internal roll-off capacitor. Instead they are used with a discrete capacitor of appropriate value for the closed loop voltage gain of the circuit.

The 748C is the externally compensated version of the 741C. This requires an external compensation capacitor connected between pins 1 and 8 (pins 3 and 12 for the 14 pin d.i.l. version). The device is fully compensated using a 30 p capacitor, and in normal use it would obviously be used with a lower value capacitor in order to obtain increased bandwidth. Figure 3.4 shows the open loop voltage gain of the 748C when it is used with a 30 p compensation capacitor at unity voltage gain, and a 2 p compensation capacitor at a gain of 100 times. It will be seen from this that a roughly tenfold increase in bandwidth is obtained using the 2 p compensation capacitor. This permits an amplifier having a closed loop gain of 100 times to achieve a bandwidth of 100 kHz , which is rather more useful than the 10 kHz bandwidth obtained from an equivalent amplifier based

on the 741C.
A useful side-effect of using external compensation is that it also gives improved power bandwidth and slew rate ratings. The 741 C has a slew rate of only 0.5 V per microsecond, but at
 rate of 5.5 volts per microsecond. The full power bandwidth of the 748C can also be over ten times that of the 741C.

Some operational amplifiers have partial internal compensation. This simply means that they have an internal compensation capacitor, but it does not provide sufficient roll-off to ensure stable operation down to unity voltage gain. Devices of this type have to be used at voltage gains of about five or more, but the exact figure varies somewhat from one type to another. As a practical example, the NE5534AN is internally compensated for voltage gains of more than three, but requires an external compensation capacitor for lower closed loop gains.

## Offset Null

Even when carefully designed bias circuits are used, operational amplifiers can still produce output voltage errors. This problem is most likely to occur when very high voltage gains are involved. A very small error at the inputs can become a huge error at the output, because the input error will be amplified by the closed loop gain of the amplifier. There are several potential causes of an offset voltage at the output, but the major cause is usually a slight lack of balance in the operational amplifier itself. In critical applications it is best to use a high quality instrumentation grade operational amplifier that is guaranteed to offer a high degree of accuracy, with minimal offsets. These tend to be very much more expensive than the standard devices, but their ease of use more than justifies the extra cost.

The alternative is to use an offset null control. Figure 3.5 shows the offset null control for the 741C, or any device which is fully compatible with the 741C. Note that many operational


amplifiers are not fully compatible with the 741C, and require a different value for VR1, or even have a totally different offset null arrangement. Figure 3.6 shows the circuit for two non-standard offset null controls. Ideally VR1 should be a multi-turn preset potentiometer, but it is usually possible to obtain good results with an ordinary type if it is adjusted very carefully. VR1 is simply adjusted for zero output voltage with no input signal applied to the circuit.

It is only fair to point out that offset null controls are not popular with circuit designers. They are believed by many circuit designers to have a drift problem, with frequent readjustment being necessary. My experience would seem to bear out this reputation for drift problems, and it would seem to be more practical to have the offset null potentiometer as a front panel control rather than a preset potentiometer tucked away inside the equipment. Where possible it is better to use a circuit that does not need an offset null control, even if this means using a much more expensive operational amplifier.

## Audio Amplification

The circuits of Figures 3.1 and 3.3 are for the standard d.c. configurations. For audio amplification it is possible to use a single supply rail if suitable bias components are added. Figures 3.7 and 3.8 show the a.c. inverting and non- inverting mode circuits. Taking the inverting mode circuit first, R1 and R4 are the negative feedback network that set the input impedance and closed-loop voltage gain of the circuit. There is unity voltage gain at d.c. due to the presence of Cl . This results in the output of the circuit, like the input, being biased to the required level of half the supply voltage.

C1 provides d.c. blocking at the input, and C3 provides the same function at the output. The values used here must be chosen to suit the input impedance of the circuit, and the load impedance across the output. The coupling capacitor and input/load impedance effectively provide a passive highpass filter. The tables, etc., provided in Chapter One should help to determine a suitable capacitance for a given input or load impedance. For audio circuits a suitable value can be found by


Fig.3. 7 The a.c. inverting amplifier circuit

dividing 22 by the input or load impedance in kilohms (e.g. $2.2 \mu$ for an input impedance of 10 k ).

R2 and R3 bias the non-inverting input to half the supply voltage. The value of these two resistors is not critical, and anything from a few kilohms to 100 k or so should give good results. Of course, they must have the same value. C2 simply decouples noise or stray feedback on the supply lines, and prevents stray pick up at the non-inverting input. Again, its value is not critical.

The non-inverting amplifier has the input biased to half the supply potential by R1 and R2. These set the input impedance of the amplifier, and the value used here must be twice the required input impedance. C 1 and C 3 provide d.c. blocking at the input and output of the circuit. R3 and R4 are the negative feedback network which control the closed-loop voltage gain in
the normal way. C 2 provides d.c. blocking in the feedback circuit so that there is unity voltage gain at d.c. This results in the output being biased to the same potential as the input (i.e. half the supply potential). The value of C 2 must be chosen to suit the value of R4. These two components effectively form another passive highpass filter. Again, dividing 22 by the value of R4 in kilohms will give a satisfactory value for audio applications.

## Terminology

There is no shortage of terminology associated with operational amplifiers. Some of the terms actually have wider usage and are not strictly speaking operational amplifier terms. A lot of the jargon is specific to operational amplifiers though, and much of the rest is the type of thing you are unlikely to encounter elsewhere. This is a list of the main terms, together with a brief explanation of each one.

## Offset Voltage

With a theoretically perfect operational amplifier, setting both its inputs at the central 0 volt supply level will result in the output assuming the same voltage. In practice offset voltages can often occur, the main consequence of which is an error in the output voltage. With a closed loop voltage gain of one the error is likely to be no more than a few millivolts. It is effectively amplified by the closed loop (d.c.) voltage gain of the circuit though, and at high gains the error can reach about one volt or even more. Where output errors caused by input offset voltages would otherwise be large enough to cause a malfunction of the circuit, an offset null control can be fitted, as explained previously. Special precision operational amplifiers which have very low offset voltages can be obtained, and generally offer a better solution.

## Slew Rate

The slew rate of an operational amplifier (or any other circuit) is the maximum rate at which the output voltage can change. It is usually expressed as a change of so many volts per microsecond. It is an important factor with operational amplifiers that will be used at high frequencies, and by high frequencies I mean the upper end of the audio range or higher. The
frequency response figures of operational amplifiers tend to be a little flattering. They often suggest that a component is perfectly usable at frequencies of a few hundred kilohertz or higher provided only low to moderate voltage gains are required. This may well be the case provided only small signal levels are involved. If large output voltage swings are required, the slew rate might prevent suitably large signals being produced. This is known as "slewing induced distortion", or just "SID" for short. Most modern operational amplifiers have much better slew rates than the early devices, and are very much less prone to this problem. Special high slew rate devices are available.

## Large Signal Bandwidth

The large signal bandwidth is similar to slew rate, and is really just a different way of looking at things. It is the maximum frequency at which the amplifier can provide its maximum output voltage swing.

## Common Mode Rejection

As an operational amplifier amplifies the voltage difference across its inputs, with a signal applied to both inputs there should be no change in the output voltage. In practice there will be a small imbalance, and some breakthrough at the output will occur. This parameter indicates how well a common input signal is suppressed at the output.

## Latch-Up

Ideally, an operational amplifier would operate properly with its inputs at any voltages. Being more realistic, it should ideally operate properly with its inputs at any voltages within the supply levels. Practical devices sometimes fail to achieve this, and will only operate properly if the input voltages are within certain limits, and (or) the differential input voltage does not exceed a certain amount. Taking the input voltages outside the specified operating range is unlikely to result in any damage, provided these voltages are not outside the supply limits. The output of the amplifier will go fully positive or negative though, and may tend to stay in that state even if the input voltages are brought back within the acceptable limits. Switching off, waiting a few seconds, and then switching on again will usually restore normal operation. This "latch-up" as it is called,
is not normally too much of a problem when an operational amplifier is used in one of its standard amplifying modes, but it is a point that has to be kept in mind if it is used as a voltage comparator, or in some unusual circuit configuration.

## Output Voltage Swing

The output voltage swing is the maximum positive and negative output levels that can be produced from a given supply voltage. This parameter is often specified with zero load on the output, but it may be given for a particular load impedance. Some modern devices can provide an output voltage swing virtually equal to the supply voltages. In particular, devices intended for operation using a single supply rail can provide output levels at virtually zero volts. With many devices the total output voltage swing is several volts less than the sum of the supply voltages. The standard $\mu \mathrm{A} 741 \mathrm{C}$ type falls within this category.

## Output Resistance

A theoretical operational amplifier has zero output resistance, but obviously this is something that is not achievable in practice. Typically the output resistance is quite low at about 75 ohms, and the application of negative feedback in a practical amplifier circuit can produce a closed loop output resistance of about one ohm. This could give the impression that operational amplifiers are power devices capable of providing quite high output currents. Apart from a few special types, this is not the case. Although the output impedance is quite low, and loading effects will normally reduce the output level by only a small amount, this only holds good for low to medium output levels, or for fairly high load impedances. At high signal levels with a low impedance load the output current limiting will come into action, and the output signal will be clipped.

## Real Devices

Although operational amplifiers were originally designed for use in analogue computers, they are now used in a wide range of applications, and most practical devices are designed to suit a particular type of circuit (precision d.c., low noise and distortion audio, etc.). This list gives some basic information for a wide range of operational amplifiers, and should prove helpful,


Fig.3.9 Pinout details for a range of single op. amps

as should the basic data in the table which follows this list. Figures 3.9 to 3.11 show pinout details for a range of operational amplifiers.


Fig.3.11 Pinout details for the L165V power op. amp. (top view)

7611 Very low supply current
CA3130E External compensation, ultra high input impedance MOS input stage, single supply operation
CA3140E Internal compensation, ultra high input impedance MOS input stage, single supply operation
CA3240 Dual version of CA3140E
EL2045C Ultra wide bandwidth, partially compensated (stable for closed loop gains of two or more)
LF351 Low noise and distortion with high input impedance f.e.t. input stage, internally compensated
LF353 Dual version of LF351
LF347 Quad version of LF351
LF411 Low input offset voltages, low drift, Jfet input stage
LF412 Dual version of LF411
LF441 Low power, Jfet input stage
LF442 Dual version of LF441
LF444 Quad version of LF441

LM301 General purpose, external compensation
LM308 Precision operational amplifier, externally compensated
LM324 Quad operational amplifier, single supply operation
LM358 Dual operational amplifier, single supply operation
LT1028CN8 Ultra low noise for audio preamplifiers
NE531 High slew rate, externally compensated
NE5532N Dual low noise and distortion device
NE5534AN Low noise and distortion device
OP-07C Precision low noise operational amplifier
OP-027GN Low noise, wide bandwidth, high slew rate, ultra low offset voltages (for instrumentation and high quality audio use)
OP-37GP Partially compensated OP-27GN (stable for closed loop gains of 5 or more)
OP-77GP Improved OP-07C
OPA124P Very high quality precision amplifier
OPA177GP Precision d.c. amplifier
OPA604AP Low noise, low distortion, wide bandwidth
RC4136 Quad low noise device
TL061 Low current consumption, Jfet input stage
TL062 Dual version of TL061
TL064 Quad version of TL061
TL071 Low noise, Jfet input stage
TL072 Dual version of TL071
TL074 Quad version of TL071
TL081 General purpose, Jfet input stage
TL082 Dual version of TL081
TL084 Quad version of TL081
TLE2027CP Ultra low noise and distortion for audio preamps
TLE2037CP Partially compensated TLE2027CP (stable for closed loop gains of five or more)
$\mu \mathrm{A} 741 \mathrm{C} \quad$ Industry standard compensated operational amplifier
$\mu \mathrm{A} 747 \mathrm{C} \quad$ Dual version of $\mu \mathrm{A} 741 \mathrm{C}$
$\mu \mathrm{A} 748 \mathrm{C} \quad \mu \mathrm{A} 741 \mathrm{C}$ without internal compensation

| Device | B. Width | Supply | S.Rate | Input $R$ | Type/Comp. |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| CA3130E | 15 MHz | $5-16 \mathrm{~V} 2 \mathrm{~mA}$ | $10 \mathrm{~V} / \mu \mathrm{s}$ | 1.5 T | MOS/Ext |
| CA3140E | 4.5 MHz | $4-36 \mathrm{~V} 4 \mathrm{~mA}$ | 9V/ $\mu \mathrm{s}$ | 1.5 T | MOS/Int |
| CA3240E | Dual version of CA3140E |  |  |  |  |
| EL2045CN | 100 MHz | $\pm 2-18 \mathrm{~V} 5.2 \mathrm{~mA}$ | 275V/ $/ \mathrm{s}$ | 150k | B1P/Int |
| LF351N | 4 MHz | $\pm 5.18 \mathrm{~V} 1.4 \mathrm{~mA}$ | $13 \mathrm{~V} / \mu \mathrm{s}$ | 1T | BIF/Int |
| LF353N | Dual version of LF351N |  |  |  |  |
| LF347N | Quad version of LF351N |  |  |  |  |
| LF411N | 4 MHz | $\pm 5.18 \mathrm{~V} 5.6 \mathrm{~mA}$ | 15V/ $/$ s | 1T | BIF/Int |
| LF412N | Dual version of LF411N |  |  |  |  |
| LF441N | 1 MHz | $\pm 5$-18V 150 ${ }^{\text {A }}$ | 1V/us | 1 T | BIF/Int |
| LF442N | Dual version of LF441N |  |  |  |  |
| LF444N | Quad version of LF441N |  |  |  |  |
| LM301N | 1 MHz | $\pm 5.18 \mathrm{~V} 1.8 \mathrm{~mA}$ | 0.4V/ $/ \mathrm{s}$ | 2M | BIP/Ext |
| LM308N | 1 MHz | $\pm 5-18 \mathrm{~V} 300 \mu \mathrm{~A}$ | 0.2V/ $/ \mathrm{s}$ | 40M | BIP/Ext |
| LM324N | 1 MHz | $3-32 \mathrm{~V} 1.5 \mathrm{~mA}$ | $0.5 \mathrm{~V} / \mathrm{\mu s}$ | 1 M | B1P/Int |
| LM1458C | 1 MHz | $\pm 3-18 \mathrm{~V} 3 \mathrm{~mA}$ | $0.5 \mathrm{~V} / \mu \mathrm{s}$ | 1 M | BIP/Int |
| NE531N | 1 MHz | $\pm 5-22 \mathrm{~V} 10 \mathrm{~mA}$ | $35 \mathrm{~V} / \mu \mathrm{s}$ | 20M | BIP/Ext |
| NE5534AN | 10 MHz | $\pm 3-20 \mathrm{~V} 4 \mathrm{~mA}$ | 13V/ $/ \mathrm{s}$ | 100k | BIP/Exı |
| NE5532N | Dual version of NE5534AN |  |  |  |  |
| OP-07CN | 0.5 MHz | $\pm 2.5-22 \mathrm{~V} 2.7 \mathrm{~mA}$ | 0.17V/ $\mu \mathrm{s}$ | 33M | B1P/Int |
| OP-27GP | 8 MHz | $\pm 5-22 \mathrm{~V} 3.5 \mathrm{~mA}$ | $2.8 \mathrm{~V} / \mu \mathrm{s}$ | 4M | BIP/Int |
| OP37GP | 63 MHz | $\pm 4-20 \mathrm{~V} 3 \mathrm{~mA}$ | $13.5 \mathrm{~V} / \mu \mathrm{s}$ | 4M | BIP/Int |
| OP-77GP | 0.6 MHz | $\pm 3-20 \mathrm{~V} 1.7 \mathrm{~mA}$ | $0.3 \mathrm{~V} / \mu \mathrm{s}$ | 45M | B1P/Int |
| OPA177GP | 0.6 MHz | $\pm 3-18 \mathrm{~V} 1.3 \mathrm{~mA}$ | $0.3 \mathrm{~V} / \mu \mathrm{s}$ | 45M | B1P/Int |
| OPA604AP | 20 MHz | $\pm 4.5-25 \mathrm{~V} 5 \mathrm{~mA}$ | $25 \mathrm{~V} / \mu \mathrm{s}$ | 1T | BIP/Int |
| RC4136 | 3 MHz | $\pm 3-18 \mathrm{~V} 7 \mathrm{~mA}$ | $1 \mathrm{~V} \mu \mathrm{~s}$ | 5M | BIP/Int |
| TL061CP | 1 MHz | $\pm 2-18 \mathrm{~V} 200 \mathrm{uA}$ | $3.5 \mathrm{~V} / \mu \mathrm{s}$ | 1 T | BIF/Int |
| TL062CP | Dual version of TL061CP |  |  |  |  |
| TL064 | Quad version of TL061CP |  |  |  |  |
| TL071CP | 3 MHz | $\pm 2-18 \mathrm{~V} 1 \mathrm{~mA}$ | 13V/ $/ \mathrm{s}$ | 1 T | BIF/Int |
| TL072CP | Dual version of TL071CP |  |  |  |  |
| TL074CP | Quad version of TL071CP |  |  |  |  |
| TL081CP | 3 MHz | $\pm 2$-18V 1.4mA | 13V/ $\mu \mathrm{s}$ | 1 T | BIF/Inı |
| TL082CP | Dual version of TL081CP |  |  |  |  |
| TL084CP | Quad version of TL081CP |  |  |  |  |
| TLE2027CP | 13 MHz | $\pm 4-22 \mathrm{~V} 3.8 \mathrm{~mA}$ | $2.8 \mathrm{~V} / \mathrm{\mu s}$ | - | BIP/Int |
| TLE2037CP | 76 MHz | $\pm 4-22 \mathrm{~V} 3.8 \mathrm{~mA}$ | 7.5V/ $\mu \mathrm{s}$ | - | B1P/Int |
| $\mu \mathrm{A} 741 \mathrm{C}$ | 1 MHz | $\pm 5-18 \mathrm{~V} 1.7 \mathrm{~mA}$ | $0.5 \mathrm{~V} / \mu \mathrm{s}$ | 2M | BIP/Int |
| $\mu \mathrm{A} 747 \mathrm{C}$ | Dual version of $\mu \mathrm{A} 741 \mathrm{C}$ |  |  |  |  |
| $\mu \mathrm{A} 748 \mathrm{C}$ | 1 MHz | $\pm 5-18 \mathrm{~V} 1.7 \mathrm{~mA}$ | $0.5 \mathrm{~V} / \mu \mathrm{s}$ | 2M | BIP/Ext |

Note that where the supply voltage is not given in plus/minus form, the device is suitable for single supply operation, but can still be used with dual balanced supplies. Of course, the dual supply range is half the quoted single supply range (e.g. $3-32 \mathrm{~V}$ or $\pm 1.5-16 \mathrm{~V}$ ). With externally compensated devices the bandwidth and slew rate figures depend on the values used in the external compensation circuit. The above figures are no more than a rough guide for externally compensated devices, and in most cases the figures are correct for a device which is compensated for unity voltage gain. The EL2045CN is internally compensated and has no provision for external compensation, but it must be used at closed loop gains of two or more. The OP-37GP is internally compensated for closed loop gains of five or more, and can not be used with external compensation. The same is true of the TLE2037CP. The NE5534AN is internally compensated for closed loop gains of three or more, and it can be used with external compensation for lower gains. In the input resistance column 1T equals one million megohms, and 1.5 T equals 1.5 million megohms. In the "Type/Comp." column these abbreviations are used:

BIF Bifet device (fully integrated Jfet input stage)
BIP Bipolar device
MOS MOSFET input stage
Ext External frequency compensation
Int Full internal frequency compensation (partial internal compensation where noted).

## Pseudo Op Amps

There are a number of operation amplifier style devices available, which are not strictly speaking operational amplifiers. These include voltage comparators, such as the LM311 and LM392. An operational amplifier can be used as a voltage comparator, but a "proper" voltage comparator has potential advantages in some applications, particularly where large differential input voltages are involved. Most devices of this type seem to have open collector output stages, and most are suitable for single supply operation.


Fig.3.12 Pinout details for some pseudo op. amps.

The LM3900N is a quad "Norton" or current differencing amplifier. The output voltage of a Norton amplifier is governed by the differential input current rather than by the difference in the input voltages, and it must be used in suitably modified circuit configurations. Norton amplifiers are now much less used than they were in the past. One probable reason for this is that they were originally designed to provide operational amplifier style circuits that would operate from a
single supply rail. There are now several operational amplifiers that offer high performance with single supply operation, such as the CA3140E and LM358N. These are now the standard choice for applications where Norton amplifiers might once have been used.

The CA3080E, LM13700N, and LM13600N are operational transconductance amplifiers. This is another form of current differencing amplifier, but the most important characteristic of a transconductance amplifier is that its gain can be controlled via a current fed to the amplifier bias input. Transconductance amplifiers are much used in voltage controlled amplifiers, voltage controlled filters, and similar voltage/current control applications.

Current feedback operational amplifiers are a relatively new development. Devices of this type are used in the standard amplifier modes, but they provide superior high frequency performance. Whereas increased closed-loop gain normally gives a proportionate decrease in bandwidth, with current feedback amplifiers the reduction in bandwidth is far less. This enables high gains at high frequencies to be achieved. The d.c. performance is relatively poor, but current feedback devices are only intended for high frequency use, and the lack of d.c. accuracy is usually of no practical importance.

Figure 3.12 provides pinout details for some popular pseudo operational amplifiers.

## CHAPTER 4

## LOGIC ICs

Although it is not that many years ago that logic integrated circuits in electronic designs for the home constructor were non-existent, they have appeared in an steadily increasing number of projects over the years. We are now at the stage where there seems to be relatively few designs that do not use at least one of these devices, and they quite often appear in circuits that are primarily linear in nature. The number of logic integrated circuits available seems to grow continuously as new devices are produced. These are mainly "improved" versions of existing devices. In fact there are now several families of these "improved" devices.

The original 74** series of TTL chips are still available, but it can be difficult to track down some devices in the range. Most of the standard 74** series are no longer recommended for use in new designs. The original rivals to the 74** TTL family, such as RTL and DTL chips, have been totally obsolete for many years. For new designs it is necessary to resort to one of the new and "improved" ranges of logic devices.

Choosing logic integrated circuits has become a rather confusing subject with so many versions to choose from. Many hobbyists simply stick to the familiar types rather than risking new components which might prove to be costly mistakes. It can also be difficult to determine which alternatives can be substituted for a given device without impairing the performance of a circuit, or even causing it to fail altogether. Here we will take a quick look at the various logic families that are available, and how they differ in terms of performance.

A table of characteristics is provided, and this summarises the information and puts it in an accessible form. However, the information provided is necessarily a generalisation, and it can do nothing more than give a rough guide to the speed, etc., of the various logic families. Individual devices within each family have slightly different propagation delays, maximum operating frequencies, etc., and for detailed information the appropriate manufacturers data sheets must be consulted.

## Standard TTL

The standard TTL devices obviously provide a reasonable standard of performance or they would never have been used on such a vast scale. One the other hand, they must have deficiencies or they would not have been ousted by subsequent logic families. They certainly have plenty of good points, but do have some major drawbacks as well. The standard range of TTL integrated circuits are based on ordinary n.p.n. bipolar transistors, and an important consequence of this is that they have quite high levels of current consumption. Devices which contain a few simple gates consume around 20 milliamps, while some of the more complex devices draw supply currents of more than 100 milliamps. This makes standard TTL integrated circuits far from ideal in applications where portability and battery operation is required.

The situation is not helped by the fact that TTL based circuits should ideally be used on a 5 volt supply having a minimum accuracy of plus and minus $5 \%$ (i.e. a supply in the range 4.75 volts to 5.25 volts). This is far from convenient if battery operation is required. In practice it is possible to use a 4.5 volt or 6 volt battery as the power source, but results are likely to be less than optimum if anything other than a well regulated 5 volt supply is used.

Another supply related problem is that TTL integrated circuits do not have good immunity to noise on the supply rails. Noise spikes on the supply can easily result in spurious operations of the TTL devices in a circuit. A well regulated 5 volt supply will help to minimise this problem, but it is also necessary to use plenty of supply decoupling capacitors. With large circuits it is normal to use one 100 n ceramic decoupling capacitor for every three or four TTL integrated circuits. These capacitors should be distributed as evenly across the circuit board as possible. Some circuit designers seem to take a no compromise approach, and use one decoupling capacitor per TTL device, with each capacitor mounted close to its particular integrated circuit. This probably represents severe overkill, but it is one way of ensuring that supply noise problems are totally avoided.

Although TTL integrated circuits were popular from the outset, they have always had something less than universal
acceptance. Their awkward power supply requirements probably represent the main reason that some circuit designers were reluctant to use them. Even where battery operation was not required, a mains power supply providing a well stabilised 5 volts at currents of a few amps was often needed. While such a supply was not technically difficult to produce, it did tend to be quite bulky and expensive.

TTL devices had a big advantage over most other early logic integrated circuits in that they could provide what, at that time anyway, was very high speed operation. In fact the standard TTL devices are respectively fast even by current standards. The maximum usable operating frequency varies significantly from one device to another, and in general the simpler components can operate at higher speeds than the complex ones. Maximum operating frequencies are typically around 30 MHz to 40 MHz , which is obviously more than adequate for most applications.

## Low Power

It is possible for manufacturers to alter the circuit values of TTL devices to produce lower supply currents, and this is basically what was done to produce the low power TTL series of devices. The original TTL integrated circuits have a " 74 " prefix, followed by a two or three digit serial number (e.g. 74138). The low power versions have the same basic type numbers, but with a "74L" prefix (e.g. "74L138).

Reducing the current consumption results in components that are much better suited to battery operation, but it also produces a reduction in the maximum operating frequency. This reduction in maximum operating frequency is far larger than one might expect. The 74L series have maximum operating frequencies of about 3 MHz , which is something under one tenth of the figure for standard TTL components. The current consumption was reduced by a similar amount incidentally. The low power TTL devices never achieved any degree of popularity, and this is probably due to the fact that their characteristics did not compare very favourably with the CMOS logic devices which came along in the early 1970s. They are now obsolete, and are probably unavailable even from suppliers of surplus components.

## LS TTL

Of the "improved" TTL families that have stood the test of time, the most important is the LS (low power Schottky) type. These are the new standard range, and are the TTL devices which are most popular for use in new designs. The LS series of components use the same basic type numbers as the standard TTL components, but with a "74LS" prefix (e.g. 74LS 138 is the low power Schotiky equivalent of the original 74138 device).

74LS versions of TTL integrated circuits are a substantial improvement on the standard devices, as they achieve higher operating speeds but at significantly lower supply currents. The improved speed and reduced current consumption is made possible by the incorporation of Schottky diodes into the circuits. The important difference between a Schottky diode and an ordinary silicon type is that it requires a forward voltage of only about 0.2 volts before it will start to conduct. This compares with a figure of about 0.5 to 0.6 volts for an ordinary silicon diode. They are also capable of high speed operation, which is crucial in the present application.

The speed of ordinary TTL integrated circuits is reduced by the fact that the switching transistors are biased into saturation. This gives problems with charge storage effects, and a slight reluctance for the transistors to switch off again. Higher operating speeds can be obtained if the base currents are regulated so that something just beyond the minimum acceptable drive currents are used. This is achieved using a Schottky diode connected between the collector and base terminals of critical switching transistors, as in Figure 4.1.

If the transistor is switched on to the point where its collector falls to about 0.4 volts, the Schottiky diode becomes forward biased and starts to divert the base current through the collector circuit of the transistor. A diode having a fast switching speed is essential, as it must divert the excess base current before the transistor is able to saturate. It is also essential that the diode has a low forward conduction voltage. With an ordinary 0.6 volt switch-on potential the diode would not be biased into conduction until the transistor had been biased into saturation.

The "74LS" circuits are not the just standard TTL types with


Fig.4.1 A Schottky diode used to prevent a transistor from saturating
a few Schottky diodes added. The circuits have been completely redesigned in order to fully exploit the advantages of Schottky diodes. Switching speeds of 74LS integrated circuits are only slightly better than those of the original TTL devices, being typically about 10 to $20 \%$ faster. This level of performance is achieved at only about a fifth of the standard TTL supply current though. The 74LS range therefore provides a substantial step forward in performance, and at a cost which is currently about $30 \%$ less than that of the standard TTL components. It is for this reason that the 74LS range has largely usurped the ordinary TTL devices.

## The Rest

There are other families of TTL integrated circuits which exploit Schottky diodes in order to obtain improved performance. The " 74 S " range have slightly higher current consumptions than their ordinary " 74 " series equivalents, but are some three to four times faster. Many devices in the 74S series can operate with input frequencies of well over 100 MHz . For some time these were the fastest TTL components that were
readily available, but as we shall see shortly, there are now devices which offer similar speeds but with lower current consumptions.

The "74ALS" (advanced low power Schottky) devices were at one time tipped to take over as the new standard TTL range. However, in reality they never achieved dominance of the TTL market, with the "LS" range providing the combination of price and performance that better suited most users' requirements. The "74ALS" devices are now something of a rarity, and are virtually obsolete. They achieve operating speeds that are nearly double those of the standard TTL components, but with current consumptions that are only about half those of the "74LS" devices.

There is also a "74AS" (advanced Schottky) range incidentally, but these never achieved a substantial market share. They have current consumptions which are much the same as the standard Schottky devices, but the maximum operating frequencies are in the region of 200 MHz . This probably makes them the fastest TTL devices that have been produced commercially.

## CMOS

CMOS is an acronym, and it stands for "complementary metal oxide silicon" (although some prefer "complementary metal oxide semiconductor"). Integrated circuits which are formed using this technology are based on enhancement mode MOSFETs ("metal oxide silicon field effect transistors"), and not ordinary bipolar transistors. As the "complementary" part of the name indicates, both N channel and P channel MOSFETs are used in these devices.

Looking at things from the users standpoint, the main difference between an enhancement MOSFET and a bipolar transistor is that the latter is current operated whereas MOSFETs are voltage operated. A bipolar transistor remains switched off until the input voltage to the base terminal reaches about 0.6 volts. Up to this point very little current flows. Raising the input voltage above 0.6 volts results in a sudden increase in the base current, and the device begins to switch on. With an input potential of only about 0.7 volts the input current becomes quite large, and the device is switched on to saturation point.

Taking the input voltage much higher is likely to cause an excessive base current, and the destruction of the transistor.

The forward transfer characteristic of an enhancement mode MOSFET is very different. These devices are switched off until the input voltage to the gate terminal reaches about 0.8 volts or so. Increasing the gate voltage above this level results in the device gradually switching on, with saturation point being reached at a gate potential of a few volts. The input resistance of a field effect transistor is extremely high, and in the case of a MOSFET it is often more than a million megohms ( $1,000,000,000,000$ ohms). This means that the current flow into the gate of a MOSFET is negligible, and is actually far too low to measure using ordinary test equipment.

CMOS logic integrated circuits therefore have extremely high input resistances, and on the face of it they should have what is effectively infinite fanout capability. If high speed operation is not required, they do indeed have what for most practical purposes can be regarded as infinite fanout. If high speed operation is needed, the input capacitance must be taken into account. This gives increased loading at high frequencies which reduces the fanout figure to about 50 . However, this is still so high that it is unlikely to be a limiting factor when designing practical CMOS logic circuits.

## Micro Power

The very high input resistance of CMOS logic devices is a very useful characteristic, but their main advantage over most other types of logic integrated circuit is their low current consumption at low operating speeds. The output stages of CMOS integrated circuits consist of complementary (PMOS/NMOS) transistors which act as electronic switches. They are connected in the manner shown in Figure 4.2. When one of the transistors is switched on it has a resistance that is typically around 300 ohms. When one of the transistors is switched off it has a resistance that is extremely high (normally at least a thousand megohms). When an output is high it has a circuit equivalent to that of Figure 4.3(a), and while it is low is has a circuit equivalent to that of Figure 4.3(b).

The important point to note here is that in both cases the total resistance across the supply lines is extremely high, and


Fig.4.2 The circuit for a basic CMOS output stage
there is an insignificant current flow. On the face of it, CMOS logic integrated circuits have a negligible current consumption. Unfortunately, in reality matters are not quite as rosy as this. The first point to note is that any current which flows into a load connected at an output (a l.e.d. indicator for example) will be added to the normal current consumption of the device driving the load. The second point is that a pulse of current is consumed each time an output changes state. In effect, one switch is turned on to a significant degree before the other one switches off properly.

If a CMOS device is not driving a current through a load of some kind, and it is either static or operating at a very low frequency, it will draw an insignificant supply current. If it changes state at a high frequency there will be a large number of current pulses drawn from the supply in a given period of

time, and a relatively high supply current. In general, the higher the operating frequency of a CMOS logic device, the higher the supply current it will consume. At low operating frequencies CMOS devices provide a massive power saving in comparison to standard TTL logic devices. At high frequencies it is possible for a CMOS device to have a higher current consumption than a TTL equivalent.

CMOS logic integrated circuits are therefore well suited to applications that require low levels of current consumption, and which involve relatively low operating frequencies. In reality they give significant power savings in practically any application, since few circuits have every stage operating at high speed. In "real world" circuits it is normally the case that some stages operate at high speed, while most of the others operate at low frequencies or are static for much of the time.

The original CMOS logic family (the " 4000 " series) was launched as a rival to the TTL range. The two ranges of devices were, and remain, almost totally incompatible. CMOS devices
have relatively low output currents that can not drive TTL inputs reliably. TTL devices have ample output currents to drive CMOS inputs properly, but do not provide suitable high and low logic levels. Where similar devices exist in the two ranges, they almost invariably have different pinout configurations.

In the 1970s a range of CMOS TTL integrated circuits were introduced, and these had "74C" type numbers. However, these were really just standard CMOS circuits, but using the TTL pinout configurations. This made it easy for designers who were familiar with the TTL devices to produce circuits based on CMOS devices. Apart from this, the "74C" range provided no improvement in the compatibility of the two families of logic devices, and the "74C" series is now obsolete.

## High Speed CMOS

The ordinary 4000 series of CMOS integrated circuits have a major limitation in that they will not operate at frequencies of more than a few megahertz. This gave CMOS and TTL integrated circuits their own market niches, with CMOS being used where low power consumption was more important than speed, and TTL being used where high speed was of paramount importance. These days there is an option which gives the best of both worlds. This is to use devices from one of the high speed CMOS logic families.

There are two common types, which are the " 74 HC " and "74HCT" series. These are both based on the same technology, and this technology is a refinement of the original CMOS type, rather than something completely new. It provides operation at far higher frequencies than the "4000" series can manage, and it also produces a much higher output current capability. The difference between the " 74 HC " and "74HCT" series is that the former operates at normal CMOS switching levels, whereas the latter operates at TTL logic levels.

The "4000" CMOS devices can operate over a supply voltage range of 3 to 15 volts, and the maximum logic 0 voltage is $30 \%$ of the supply voltage. The minimum logic 1 potential is $70 \%$ of the supply voltage. The " 74 HC " devices can only operate over a supply voltage range of 2 to 6 volts, and they are primarily intended for use in circuits that include components
from the standard " 4000 " range. Of course, circuits can also be based solely on "74HC" series devices.

For TTL logic circuits the supply potential should normally be 5 volts, and the maximum acceptable logic 0 level is 0.8 volts. The minimum legitimate logic 1 level is 2 volts. The " 74 HCT " range are primarily intended for use in circuits that include devices from other TTL families. CMOS integrated circuits, unlike TTL devices, have good immunity to noise on the supply rails. The " 74 HC " range retain this excellent noise immunity, but the "74HCT" range does not. Therefore, if a circuit is to be based solely on high speed CMOS integrated circuits, the "74HC" series would seem to be a better choice than the " 74 HCT " range.

For both ranges of high speed CMOS devices the current consumption varies from a negligible level when static or operating at low frequencies, to a level that is comparable to equivalent "74LS" devices when operating at very high frequencies. The maximum operating frequency for high speed CMOS devices is much the same as for equivalent "74LS" components. There are advanced high speed CMOS devices which can operate at frequencies of over 100 MHz (the " 74 AC " series), but as yet these are quite expensive, and difficult to obtain.

## Which TTL?

With several types of TTL integrated circuit readily available, selecting the best type for a given application can be difficult. If you are following a published design, then it would clearly be advisable to use the exact types specified in the components list. If you are designing your own circuits, then "74LS" components would seem to be the obvious choice. It is probably only worth using a different type if the "74LS" devices are deficient in some way. If their current consumption is too high, then devices in the " 74 HCT " or " 74 HC " series would be a better choice, particularly if much of the circuit is operating at low frequencies, or in an intermittent fashion. Being realistic about matters, if low current consumption is important, and high operating speed is of no consequence, then "4000" series CMOS integrated circuits may well be a better choice than any TTL range. Where very high operating speeds are needed,
"74ALS" or "74AC" devices should be suitable, if you can obtain them.

It has to be pointed out that the " 74 HC " and "74HCT" devices are starting to become cheaper than the "74LS" equivalents. We would seem to be reaching the point where using high speed CMOS components has become cheaper than using "74LS" types. If high speed CMOS components can be obtained more cheaply than the "74LS" types, then a circuit based solely on " 74 HC " devices is certainly the best choice. Possibly the "74LS" series will become largely obsolete over the next few years.

In general there is no difficulty in using a mixture of TTL types. The obvious exception is the " 74 HC " series, with its CMOS " 4000 " series logic levels. If high speed CMOS devices are used with other types of TTL integrated circuit, it is the "74HCT" range which must be utilized. The main reason for using a mixture of TTL types is as an economy measure in a circuit where only certain stages need to operate at high frequencies. Devices from a high speed TTL range (e.g. "74ALS" types) would be used in the critical stages, with ordinary "74LS" or "74HCT" components being used elsewhere. Another reason for using a mixture of TTL types is that it is not always possible to find the devices you require in the appropriate TTL family. For example, the popular 74121 monostable only seems to be available as a standard TTL device, and is not available as a 74LS121, 74HCT121, etc.

The main point to watch when mixing TTL types is the fanout of the various devices in the circuit. With certain TTL combinations the fanout is very low indeed. In particular, 74HCT outputs can only drive two standard TTL inputs. This table shows the fanout for three common TTL families when used in any combination.

| TTL Type (Driving) | Maximum |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  | No. of | Inputs Driven |  |
|  | 10 | 74LS | 74HCT |
| 74 | 30 | 60 | $100+$ |
| 74 buffers | 5 | 20 | $100+$ |
| 74LS | 15 | 60 | $100+$ |
| 74LS buffers | 2 | 10 | $100+$ |
| 74HCT | 4 | 15 | $100+$ |
| 74HCT buffers |  |  |  |

This table summarises the basic characteristics of several families of logic devices.

| $\begin{aligned} & \text { Supply } \\ & \text { Votage } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Sld TTL } \\ & \text { SV } \\ & (+5 \%) \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { LSTTL } \\ & \text { SV } \\ & (+5 \%) \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { ALS TTL } \\ & 5 V \\ & (+5 \%) \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { STTL } \\ & \text { sV } \\ & (+5 \%) \end{aligned}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| DC Fanout | 40 | 20 | 20 | 50 |
| Maximum Low Input V | 0.8 V | 0.8 V | 0.8 V | 0.8 V |
| Minimum High Input V | 2V | 2v | 2V | 2V |
| Maximum Low Output V | 0.4 V | 0.5v | 0.5v | 0.5v |
| Minimum High Output V | 2.4 V | 2.7 v | 2.7v | 2.7v |
| DC Noise Margin (L/H) | 0.3/0.7 | 0.3/0.7 | 0.40 .7 | 0.3/0.7 |
| Input Cur. ( $\mathrm{L} / \mathrm{H} \mu \mathrm{A}$ ) | $40 / 1600$ | 20/400 | 20200 | - |
| Output Cur. L/ HmA | 16/0.4 | 8/0.4 | 8/0.4 | 20- |
| Temp. Range (Degrees C) | 070 | on0 | 070 | Ono |
| Typical Max Frequency | 35 MHz | 40 MHz | 70MHz | 120 MHz |
| Relative Power Diss. | 1 | 0.2 | 0.1 | 1 |
| Supply Voltage | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Std CMOS } \\ & 3-18 \mathrm{~V} \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 74 \mathrm{HC} \\ & 2-6 \mathrm{~V} \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 74 \mathrm{HCT} \\ & 5 \mathrm{~V} \\ & ( \pm 10 \%) \end{aligned}$ | $\underset{2-6 \mathrm{~V}}{\mathrm{FACT}}$ |
| DC Fanout | 1 | 10 | 10 | 60 |
| Maximum Low Input V | 1.5v | 0.9 V | 0.8 V | 1.35 V |


| Minimum High <br> Input V | 3.5 V | 3.15 V | 2 V | 3.15 V |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Maximum Low <br> Output V | 0.05 V | 0.1 V | 0.1 V | 0.1 V |
| Minimum High <br> Output V | 4.95 V | 4.9 V | 4.9 V | 4.9 V |
| DC Noise <br> Margin (L/H) <br> Input Cur. <br> (L/H $\mu \mathrm{A}$ ) | $1.45 / 1.45$ | $0.8 / 1.25$ | $-/-$ | $1.25 / 1.25$ |
| Output Cur. <br> L/H mA) | $2.1 / 0.45$ | $4 / 4$ | $4 / 4$ | $1 / 1$ |
| Temp. Range <br> (Degrees C) | $-40 /+85$ | $-40 /+85$ | $-40 /+85$ | $-40 \mathrm{~V}+85$ |
| Typical Max <br> Frequency | 35 MHz | 40 MHz | 70 MHz | 120 MHz |
| Relative <br> Power Diss. | 1 | 0.2 | 0.1 | $1 / 1$ |

The following list covers TTL devices, and gives both the function and package type for each device that is listed. This should be useful when trying to find the function of a particular device. The smaller lists after the main one are useful when looking for a device that has the required function. Not all TTL devices are included, but most of those that are readily available to non-professional users are listed here.

| Device | Function | Package |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 7400 | Quad 2 input NAND gate | 14 pin DIL |
| 7401 | Quad 2 input NAND gate <br> (open collector) | 14 pin DIL |
| 7402 | Quad 2 input NOR gate | 14 pin DIL |
| 7403 | Quad 2 input NAND gate <br> (open collector) | 14 pin DIL |
| 7404 | Hex inverter | 14 pin DIL |
| 7405 | Hex inverter (open collector) | 14 pin DIL |


| 7406 | Hex inverter/buffer (open collector) | 14 pin DIL |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 7407 | Hex buffer | 14 pin DIL |
| 7408 | Quad 2 input AND gate | 14 pin DIL |
| 7409 | Quad 2 input AND gate (open collector) | 14 pin DIL |
| 7410 | Triple 3 input NAND gate | 14 pin DIL |
| 7411 | Triple 3 input AND gate | 14 pin DIL |
| 7412 | Triple 3 input NAND gate (open collector) | 14 pin DIL |
| 7413 | Dual 4 input NAND (trigger) | 14 pin DIL |
| 7414 | Hex Schmitt trigger | 14 pin DIL |
| 7415 | Triple 3 input AND gate (open collector) | 14 pin DIL |
| 7416 | Hex inverter/buffer (open collector) | 14 pin DIL |
| 7417 | Hex buffer (open collector) | 14 pin DIL |
| 7420 | Dual 4 input NAND gate | 14 pin DIL |
| 7421 | Dual 4 input AND gate | 14 pin DIL |
| 7422 | Dual 4 input NAND gate (open collector) | 14 pin DIL |
| 7425 | Dual 4 input NOR gate (with strobe) | 14 pin DIL |
| 7426 | Quad 2 input NAND gate (open collector) | 14 pin DIL |
| 7427 | Triple 3 input NOR gate | 14 pin DIL |
| 7428 | Quad 2 input NOR buffer | 14 pin DIL |
| 7430 | 8 input NAND gate | 14 pin DIL |
| 7432 | Quad 2 input OR gate | 14 pin DIL |
| 7433 | Quad 2 input NOR buffer (open collector) | 14 pin DIL |
| 7437 | Quad 2 input NAND buffer (open collector) | 14 pin DIL |
| 7438 | Quad 2 input AND buffer (open collector) | 14 pin DIL |
| 7440 | Dual 4 input NAND buffer | 14 pin DIL |
| 7442 | BCD to decimal decoder (1 of 10) | 16 pin DIL |
| 7447 | BCD to 7 seg decoder/driver | 16 pin DIL |
| 7448 | BCD to 7 seg decoder/driver | 16 pin DIL |
| 7451 | Complex AND/OR/inverter gate | 14 pin DIL |


| 7454 | Complex AND/OR/inverter gate | 14 pin DIL |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 7470 | JK edge triggered flip/flop | 14 pin DIL |
| 7472 | JK pulse triggered flip/flop | 14 pin DIL |
| 7473 | Dual JK flip/flop | 14 pin DIL |
| 7474 | Dual D type flip/flop | 14 pin DIL |
| 7475 | Dual 2 bit transparent latch | 16 pin DIL |
| 7476 | Dual JK flip/flop | 16 pin DIL |
| 7481 | 16 bit RAM | 14 pin DIL |
| 7483 | 4 bit full adder | 16 pin DIL |
| 7485 | 4 bit magnitude comparator | 16 pin DIL |
| 7486 | Quad 2 input XOR gate | 14 pin DIL |
| 7489 | 64 bit RAM | 16 pin DIL |
| 7490 | Decade counter | 14 pin DIL |
| 7492 | Divide by 12 counter | 14 pin DIL |
| 7493 | 4 bit binary ripple counter | 14 pin DIL |
| 7495 | 4 bit shift register | 14 pin DIL |
| 7496 | bit shift register | 16 pin DIL |
| 74107 | Dual JK flip/flop | 14 pin DIL |
| 74109 | Dual JK flip/flop | 16 pin DIL |
| 74112 | Dual JK flip/flop | 16 pin DIL |
| 74113 | Dual JK flip/flop | 14 pin DIL |
| 74118 | Hex S/R latch | 16 pin DIL |
| 74121 | Monostable | 14 pin DIL |
| 74122 | Retriggerable monostable | 14 pin DIL |
| 74123 | Dual retriggerable monostable | 16 pin DIL |
| 74125 | Quad 3 state buffer | 14 pin DIL |
| 74126 | Quad 3 state buffer | 14 pin DIL |
| 74132 | Quad 2 input NAND trigger | 14 pin DIL |
| 74136 | Quad 2 input XOR gate | 14 pin DIL |
| 74137 | (open collector) | 16 pin DIL |
| 74138 | 3 to 8 line decoder | 16 pin DIL |
| 74139 | Dual 1 of 4 decoder | 16 pin DIL |
| 74141 | BCD to decimal decoder/driver | 16 pin DIL |
| 74145 | BCD to decimal decoder | 16 pin DIL |
|  | (open collector) | 24 pin DIL |
| 74150 | 16 input multiplexer | 16 pin DIL |
| 74151 | 8 input multiplexer | 16 pin DIL |
| 74153 | Dual 4 to 1 multiplexer | 24 pin DIL |
| 74154 | 1 of 16 decoder/demultiplexer |  |

Dual 2 to 4 line decoder
Dual 2 to 4 line decoder (open collector)
74157 Quad 2 input data selector (inv)
74158
74160
74161
74162
74163
74164
74165
74166
74168
74169
74170
74173
74174
74175
74181
74190
74191
74192
74193
74194
74195
74196
74197
74221 Dual monostable
742373 to 8 line decoder
742383 to 8 line decoder
74240 Octal 3 state inverter/buffer
74241 Octal 3 state buffer
74242 Quad inverting transceiver (3 state)
74243 Quad transceiver (3 state)
74244 Octal 3 state buffer

16 pin DIL 16 pin DIL

16 pin DIL 16 pin DIL 16 pin DIL 16 pin DIL 16 pin DIL 16 pin DIL 14 pin DIL 16 pin DIL 16 pin DIL 16 pin DIL 16 pin DIL 16 pin DIL 16 pin DIL 16 pin DIL 16 pin DIL 24 pin DIL 16 pin DIL 16 pin DIL 16 pin DIL 16 pin DIL 16 pin DIL 16 pin DIL 14 pin DIL 14 pin DIL 16 pin DIL 16 pin DIL 16 pin DIL 20 pin DIL 20 pin DIL

14 pin DIL
14 pin DIL
20 pin DIL

| 74245 | Octal 3 state transceiver | 20 pin DIL |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 74251 | 8 input multiplexer (3 state) | 16 pin DIL |
| 74253 | Dual 4 input multiplexer (3 state) | 16 pin Dil |
| 74257 | Quad 2 to 1 line data selector <br> (3 state outputs, non-inverting) | 16 pin DIL |
| 74258 | Quad 2 to 1 line data selector ( 3 state outputs, inverting) | 16 pin DIL |
| 74259 | 8 bit addressable latch | 16 pin DIL |
| 74260 | Dual 5 input NOR gate | 16 pin DIL |
| 74261 | Multiplex decoder | 14 pin DIL |
| 74266 | Quad 2 input XNOR gate (open collector) | 14 pin DIL |
| 74273 | Octal D type flip/flop | 20 pin DIL |
| 74279 | Quad S/R latch | 16 pin DIL |
| 74283 | 4 bit full adder with fast carry | 16 pin DIL |
| 74290 | Decade counter | 14 pin DIL |
| 74292 | Programmable divider/timer | 16 pin DIL |
| 74293 | 4 bit binary ripple counter | 14 pin DIL |
| 74297 | Digital phase locked loop filter | 16 pin DIL |
| 74298 | Quad 2 port register, true and complementary outputs | 16 pin DIL |
| 74323 | 8 bit universal shiftstorage reg | 20 pin DIL |
| 74365 | Hex buffer, 3 state, gated enable inputs | 16 pin DIL |
| 74366 | Hex inverter, 3 state, gated enable inputs | 16 pin DIL |
| 74367 | Hex buffer, 3 state, enable inputs | 16 pin DIL |
| 74368 | Hex inverter, 3 state, enable inputs | 16 pin DIL |
| 74373 | Octal transparent latch, 3 state | 20 pin DIL |
| 74374 | Octal D type flip/flop, 3 state | 20 pin DIL |
| 74377 | Octal D type flip/flop with clock enable | 20 pin DIL |
| 74378 | Hex D type flip/flop with clock enable | 16 pin DIL |
| 74379 | Quad D type flip/flop with clock enable | 16 pin DIL |
| 74390 | Dual decade ripple counter | 16 pin DIL |
| 74393 | Dual 4 bit binary ripple counter | 14 pin DIL |
| 74395 | 4 bit cascadeable shift register, |  |


|  | 3 state outputs | 16 pin DIL |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 74399 | Quad 2 port register, single <br> rail output | 16 pin DIL |
| 74490 | Decade counter | 16 pin DIL |
| 74534 | Octal D type flip/flop | 20 pin DIL |
| 74601 | 64K Dynamic RAM refresh <br> controller | 20 pin DIL |
| 74604 | Octal 2 input multiplexed latch, |  |
|  | 3 state outputs | 28 pin DIL |
| 74629 | Voltage controlled oscillator | 16 pin DIL |
| 74670 | $4 \times 4$ register file, 3 state | 16 pin DIL |
| 74684 | 8 bit magnitude comparator | 20 pin DIL |
| 74688 | 8 bit magnitude comparator | 20 pin DIL |

AND Gates
7408 quad 2 input
7409 quad 2 input (open collector)
7411 triple 3 input
7415 triple 3 input (open collector)
7421 dual 4 input

## NAND Gates

7400 quad 2 input
7401 quad 2 input (open collector)
7403 quad 2 input (open collector)
7410 triple 3 input
7420 dual 4 input
7422 dual 4 input (open collector)
7426 quad 2 input (open collector)
7430 single 8 input
7437 quad 2 input buffer
7438 quad 2 input buffer (open collector)
74132 quad 2 input (Schmitt trigger)

## OR Gates

7432 quad 2 input
NOR Gates
7402 quad 2 input
7425 dual 4 input
triple 3 input
7428 quad 2 input buffer
7433 quad 2 input (open collector)
74260

Other Gates/inverters/Buffers
7404 hex inverter
7405 hex inverter (open collector)
7406 hex inverter (open collector)
7407 hex buffer (open collector)
7414 hex inverting trigger
7416 hex inverter (open collector)
7417 hex buffer (open collector, 30V)
7486 quad 2 input XOR
74266 quad 2 input XNOR (open collector)
74125 quad tristate buffer (active low)
74126 quad tristate buffer (active high)
74244 octal tristate buffer
74245 octal transceiver
74365 hex 3 state
74366 hex inverting 3 state
74367 hex 3 state
74368 hex inverting 3 state

Flip/Flops
7470 positive edge triggered JK
7472 JK master slave
7473 dual JK with clear •
7474 dual D type (edge triggered)
74754 bit bistable latch
7476 dual JK with clear and preset
74107 dual JK with clear
74109 dual positive edge triggered JK
74112 dual negative edge triggered JK
74174 hex D type
74175 quad D type
74273 octal D type
74373 octal transparent latch
74374 octal D type (3 state)

| Shift Registers |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| 7495 | 4 bit |
| 7496 | 5 bit |
| 74164 | 8 bit |
| 74165 | 8 bit |
| 74166 | 8 bit |
| 74170 | $4 \times 4$ register file |
| 74194 | 4 bit |
| 74195 | 4 bit parallel |
| 74395 | 4 bit cascadeable |

Counters
7490 decade
7492 divide by 12
74934 bit binary
$74160 \quad 4$ bit decade
741614 bit binary
741624 bit décade (synchronous)
741634 bit binary (synchronous)
741694 bit binary
74190 BCD counter
74191 binary counter
74192 BCD dual clock
74193 binary dual clock
74196 presettable decade
74197 presettable binary
74390 dual decade
74490 decade
Decoder/Drivers
7442 BCD to decimal decoder
7447 BCD to 7 segment decoder
7448 BCD to 7 segment decoder
$74137 \quad 3$ to 8 line
$74138 \quad 3$ to 8 line
74139 dual 2 to 4 line decoder
74141 BCD to decimal decoder

74145 BCD to decimal decoder
741501 of 16 data selector
$74151 \quad 1$ of 8 data selector
74153 dual 4 to 1 line data selector
741544 to 16 line decoder
74155 dual 2 to 4 line
74156 dual 2 to 4 line (open collector)
74157 quad 2 to 1 line data selector
74158 quad 2 to 1 line data selector
742373 to 8 line decoder
742383 to 8 line decoder
74251 data selector
74257 quad data selector
Miscellaneous
74854 bit magnitude comparator
74121 monostable
74122 retriggerable monostable
74123 dual retriggerable monostable
74629 dual voltage controlled oscillator
746848 bit magnitude comparator
746888 bit magnitude comparator
Figure 4.4 to 4.11 provide pinout details for a wide range of TTL chips.

## CMOS

These lists are the CMOS equivalents to the TTL ones provided previously. Again, the entire range of devices is not covered, but most of those that are available to the electronics hobbyist are included here.

| Device | Function | Package |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 4000 | dual 3 input NOR gate and inverter | 14 pin DIL |
| 4001 | quad 2 input NOR gate | 14 pin DIL |
| 4002 | dual 4 input NOR gate | 14 pin DIL |
| 4006 | 18 stage static shift register | 14 pin DIL |
| 4007 | dual complementary pair plus | 14 pin DIL |
|  | inverter |  |
| 4008 | 4 bit full adder | 14 pin DIL |




Fig.4.5 Pinout details for some 3 input TTL gates



Fig.4.7 Pinout details for some TTL buffers/inverters





Fig.4.10 Pinout details for TTL monostables, etc.

hex inverting buffer
14 pin DIL
4010
4011
4012
4013
4014
4015
4016
4017
4018
4019
4020
4021
4022
4023
4024
4025
4026
4027
4028
4029
4030
4033
4035
4040
4041
4042
4043
4044
4046
4047
4049
4050
4051
4052
4053
4056
4060
4063
4066
hex buffer
quad 2 input NAND
dual 4 input NAND
dual D type flip/flop
8 bit shift register
8 bit shift register
quad analogue switch
1 of 10 decoder
presettable BCD counter
quad AND/OR select gate
14 stage binary ripple counter
8 stage static shift register
divide by 8 and 1 of 8 decoder
triple 3 input NAND gate
7 stage binary ripple counter
triple 3 input NOR gate
decade counter/7 segment driver
dual JK master slave flip/flop
BCD to decimal decoder
presettable up/down counter quad 2 input XOR gate
decade counter/7 segment driver 4 stage shift register
12 stage binary ripple counter quad buffer
quad clocked D latch
quad NOR R/S latch (3 state)
quad NAND latch (3 state)
micro-power phase locked loop
astable/monostable
hex inverting buffer hex buffer
8 way 1 pole analogue switch dual 4 way 1 pole analogue switch
3 way 2 pole analogue switch BCD to 7 segment decoder (LCD)
Osc and 14 stage binary counter 4 bit magnitude comparator quad analogue switch

14 pin DLL
14 pin DIL
14 pin DLL
14 pin DIL
16 pin DIL
16 pin DIL
14 pin DIL
16 pin DIL
16 pin DIL
16 pin DIL
16 pin DIL
16 pin DIL
16 pin DIL
14 pin DIL
14 pin DLL
14 pin DIL
16 pin DIL
16 pin DIL
16 pin DIL
16 pin DIL
14 pin DIL
16 pin DIL
16 pin DIL
16 pin DLL
14 pin DIL
16 pin DIL
16 pin DIL
16 pin DIL
16 pin DIL
14 pin DIL
16 pin DIL
16 pin DIL
16 pin DIL
16 pin DIL
16 pin DIL
16 pin DIL
16 pin DIL
16 pin DIL
14 pin DIL

16 way 1 pole analogue switch
24 pin DIL
4068
4069
8 input AND/NAND gate
14 pin DIL
4070
4071
4072 hex inverter 14 pin DIL 14 pin DIL 14 pin DIL 14 pin DIL
4073 triple 3 input AND gate 14 pin DIL
4075 triple 3 input OR gate
14 pin DIL
$4076 \quad 4$ bit D type register
4077 quad 2 input XNOR gate
4078 8 input NOR gate

16 pin DIL
14 pin DIL
14 pin DIL
4081 quad 2 input AND gate
14 pin DIL
4082 dual 4 input AND gate 14 pin DIL
4093 quad 2 input NAND Schmitt trigger
4094
8 stage shift register
14 pin DIL
16 pin DIL
4098 dual monostable
40998 bit addressable latch
40103
40105
40106
40107
40108
40109
8 stage counter
FIFO register
16 pin DIL
16 pin DIL
16 pin DIL
16 pin DIL
$40181 \quad 4$ bit logic unit

4416
4419
4502
4503
4508
4511
4512
4514
4515
4516

14 pin DIL
8 pin DIL
24 pin DIL
16 pin DIL
40110 decade up/down counter/7 segment decoder/driver

16 pin DIL
40174 hex D type flip/flop
40182 look ahead carry generator
40257 quad 2 to 1 line data selector
$4510 \quad$ BCD presettable counter
hex Schmitt trigger
dual 2 input NAND buffer $4 \times 4$ multiport register quad voltage shifter

16 pin DIL
24 pin DIL
16 pin DIL
16 pin DIL
14 pin DIL
16 pin DIL
16 pin DIL
16 pin DIL
24 pin DIL
16 pin DIL
16 pin DIL
16 pin DIL
24 pin DIL
24 pin DIL
16 pin DIL

| 4518 | dual BCD counter | 16 pin DIL |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 4520 | dual binary counter | 16 pin DIL |
| 4526 | 4 bit binary counter | 16 pin DIL |
| 4528 | dual monostable | 16 pin DIL |
| 4532 | 8 bit priority encoder | 16 pin DIL |
| 4536 | programmable counter | 16 pin DIL |
| 4541 | programmable timer | 14 pin DIL |
| 4555 | dual binary 1 of 4 decoder | 16 pin DIL |
| 45100 | $4 \times 4$ crosspoint switch | 16 pin DIL |

AND Gates
4081 quad 2 input
4073 triple 3 input

4082 dual 4 input
NAND Gates
4011 quad 2 input
4023 triple 3 input
4012 dual 4 input
4068 single 8 input
4093 quad 2 input (Schmitt trigger)
OR Gates
4071 quad 2 input
4075 triple 3 input
4072 dual 4 input
NOR Gates
4001 quad 2 input
4025 triple 3 input
4002 dual 4 input
4078 single 8 input
4000 dual 3 input plus inverter
Other Gates/Buffers/Inverters
4007 Complementary pair plus inverter
4009 hex inverter
4010 hex buffer
4041 quad (true/complement)
4049 hex inverter (high current)

| 4050 | hex buffer (high current) |
| :--- | :--- |
| 4069 | hex inverter |
| 4070 | quad 2 input XOR |
| 4077 | quad 2 input XNOR |
| 40106 | hex inverting trigger |
| 4502 | hex inverting (3 state) |
| 4503 | hex tristate buffer |

Flip/Flops

| 4013 | dual D type |
| :--- | :--- |
| 4027 | dual JK master slave |
| 4042 | quad clocked D latch |
| 4043 | quad 3 state NOR R/S latch |
| 4044 | quad 3 state NAND R/S latch |
| 4076 | 4 bit D type register |
| 40108 | $4 \times 4$ multiport register |
| 40174 | hex D type |
| 4508 | dual 4 bit latch |


| Shift | Registers |
| :--- | :--- |
| 4006 | 18 bit shift register |
| 4014 | 8 bit shift register |
| 4015 | 8 bit shift register |
| 4021 | 8 stage static shift register |
| 4035 | 4 stage static shift register |
| 4094 | 8 stage shift register |
| 40105 | FIFO register |

Counters
4017 divide by ten and 1 of 10 decoder
4018 presettable BCD counter
$4020 \quad 14$ stage binary ripple counter
4022 divide by 8 and 1 of 8 decoder
$4024 \quad 7$ stage binary ripple counter
4026 decade counter and 7 segment decoder/driver
4029 presettable up/down counter
4033 decade counter and 7 segment decoder/driver
$4040 \quad 12$ stage binary ripple counter
$4060 \quad 14$ stage binary counter and oscillator
401038 stage counter

40110 decade up/down counter and 7 segment decoder/driver
4510 presettable counter
4516 binary presettable counter
4518 dual BCD counter
4520 dual binary counter
45264 bit binary counter
4536 programmable counter
Decoders, Etc.
$4017 \quad 1$ of 10
$4022 \quad 1$ of 8
4026 decade counter and 7 segment decoder
4028 BCD to decimal decoder
4033 decade counter and 7 segment decoder
40518 channel analogue multiplexer
4052 dual 4 channel analogue multiplexer
4053 triple 2 channel multiplexer
4056 BCD to 7 segment decoder (LCD)
406716 channel analogue multiplexer
4419 keyboard to binary encoder
$4511 \quad$ BCD to 7 segment decoder
$4514 \quad 4$ to 16 line decoder
$4515 \quad 4$ to 16 line decoder
45328 bit priority encoder

## Miscellaneous

4016 quad spst analogue switch
4046 micro-power phase locked loop
4047 astable/monostable
4063 magnitude comparator
4066 quad spst analogue switch
4098 dual monostable
$40181 \quad 4$ bit logic unit
4416 quad spst analogue switch
4541 programmable timer
$45100 \quad 4 \times 4$ crosspoint switch
Figures 4.12 to 4.18 provide pinout details for a wide range of CMOS logic devices.


Fig.4.12 Pinout details for some 2 input CMOS gates



Fig.4.14 Pinout details for some 3 input CMOS gates, and buffers/inverters




Fig.4.17 Pinout details for some CMOS display drivers and other devices


Fig.4.18 Pinout details for miscellaneous CMOS devices

## Gates

The most simple of the logic building blocks are the gates. Figure 4.19 shows the circuit symbols for a selection of logic gates, plus one or two other simple logic devices. Note that the more complex logic integrated circuits do not have special circuit symbols, and like any other complex integrated circuits, they are simply represented by rectangles on circuit diagrams.

The most simple gate is the not type, or inverter as it is more commonly known. This simply provides an output that is the opposite of the input level. The functions of logic devices are often explained with the aid of a truth table. This is a table which shows every possible combination of input states, together with the output state (or states in the case of a multiple output circuit) produced by each set of input levels. An inverter is too simple for a truth table to be worthwhile, but the inverter truth table shown here does illustrate the basic scheme of things. In general, the more complex a logic block, the more helpful its truth table will prove to be.

## Inverter Truth Table

| INPUT | OUTPUT |
| :---: | :---: |
| Low | High |
| High | Low |

Inverters may seem to be of little real value, but they are actually used a great deal in practical circuits. Logic circuit designers are often faced with outputs that go high when a low signal level is required, and vice versa. Adding an inverter provides a signal of the required type. Inverters are also much used in oscillator circuits.

Most gates have two or more inputs. The two basic forms of multi-input gate are the 2 input AND and 2 input OR varieties. The output of a 2 input AND gate is high when both input 1 and input 2 are high, but is low for any other combination of input levels. The output of a 2 input OR gate is high when input 1 or input 2 is high, but is low for any other set of input levels. These are the truth tables for 2 input AND and OR gates.


Fig.4.19 Gates, inverter, and buffer circuit symbols

| INPUT I | INPUT 2 | OUTPUT |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Low | Low | Low |
| Low | High | Low |
| High | Low | Low |
| High | High | High |

## 2 Input OR Gate Truth Table

| INPUT I | INPUT 2 | OUTPUT |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Low | Low | Low |
| Low | High | High |
| High | Low | High |
| High | High | High |

The same basic rules apply for a gate that has more than two inputs. For a 3 input AND gate for example, the output is high if input 1 , input 2 , and input 3 are high, but is low for any other combination of input states. The output of a 4 input OR gate is high if input 1 or input 2 or input 3 or input 4 is high, but is low if none of the inputs are high. This truth table is for a 4 input AND gate.

4 Input AND Gate Truth Table

| INPUT I | INPUT 2 | INPUT 3 | INPUT 4 | OUTPUT |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Low | Low | Low | Low | Low |
| Low | Low | Low | High | Low |
| Low | Low | High | Low | Low |
| Low | Low | High | High | Low |
| Low | High | Low | Low | Low |
| Low | High | Low | High | Low |
| Low | High | High | Low | Low |
| Low | High | High | High | Low |
| High | Low | Low | Low | Low |
| High | Low | Low | High | Low |
| High | Low | High | Low | Low |
| High | Low | High | High | Low |


| High | High | Low | Low | Low |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| High | High | Low | High | Low |
| High | High | High | Low | Low |
| High | High | High | High | High |

There is a variation on the AND gate called the NAND gate. This is effectively just an AND gate with an inverter added at the output. Consequently, for a given set of input states it will provide the opposite output state to an AND gate. It therefore provides a low output level if all the inputs are high, but a high output level for any other combination of input states.

Similarly, a NOR gate is a variation on the OR gate, and it is effectively an OR gate with an inverter added at the output. Therefore, the output goes low if one or more of the inputs is high, or is high if the inputs are all low. These are the truth tables for 2 input NAND and NOR gates, plus the truth table for a 4 input NAND gate.

## 2 Input NAND Gate Truth Table

| INPUT I | INPUT 2 | OUTPUT |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Low | Low | High |
| Low | High | High |
| High | Low | High |
| High | High | Low |

## 2 Input NOR Gate Truth Table

| INPUT 1 | INPUT 2 | OUTPUT |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Low | Low | High |
| Low | High | Low |
| High | Low | Low |
| High | High | Low |


| INPUT I | INPUT 2 | INPUT 3 | INPUT 4 | OUTPUT |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Low | Low | Low | Low | High |
| Low | Low | Low | High | High |
| Low | Low | High | Low | High |
| Low | Low | High | High | High |
| Low | High | Low | Low | High |
| Low | High | Low | High | High |
| Low | High | High | Low | High |
| Low | High | High | High | High |
| High | Low | Low | Low | High |
| High | Low | Low | High | High |
| High | Low | High | Low | High |
| High | Low | High | High | High |
| High | High | Low | Low | High |
| High | High | Low | High | High |
| High | High | High | Low | High |
| High | High | High | High | Low |

There is another variation on the OR gate, and this is the Exclusive OR (XOR) type. The output of an ordinary 2 input OR gate goes high if input 1 or input 2 goes high. However, it also goes high if both input 1 and input 2 go high, rather than just one or the other of them. With an exclusive OR gate the output only goes high if just one input goes high. Any other set of input states results in the output assuming the low state. An exclusive OR gate therefore provides what could reasonably be regarded as a true OR gate function. An exclusive NOR (XNOR) gate provides the same basic function as an exclusive OR gate, but has an inverted output. Exclusive OR and exclusive NOR gates do not seem to be used a great deal in practical applications, but they do have their uses. These are the truth tables for 2 input exclusive OR and exclusive NOR gates, plus the truth table for a 3 input exclusive OR gate.

2 Input XOR Gate Truth Table

| INPUT I | INPUT 2 | OUTPUT |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Low | Low | Low |
| Low | High | High |
| High | Low | High |
| High | High | Low |

2 Input XNOR Gate Truth Table

| INPUT 1 | INPUT 2 | OUTPUT |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Low | Low | High |
| Low | High | Low |
| High | Low | Low |
| High | High | High |

3 Input XOR Gate Truth Table

| INPUTI | INPUT 2 | INPUT 3 | OUTPUT |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Low | Low | Low | Low |
| Low | Low | High | High |
| Low | High | Low | High |
| Low | High | High | Low |
| High | Low | Low | High |
| High | Low | High | Low |
| High | High | Low | Low |
| High | High | High | Low |

## Chapter 5

## TRANSISTORS, ETC.

Although perhaps not quite such a central part of electronic projects as they once were, having to a large extent been displaced by integrated circuits, transistors are still to be found in many projects. There is certainly no shortage of different types, albeit that some popular devices are available under several different type numbers. In these cases the silicon chip is exactly the same, and it is only the encapsulation or leadout configuration that is different from one type to the next. The basic action of an ordinary bipolar transistor is to provide current amplification, and Figure 5.1 shows the standard transistor test set up. VR1 provides a variable base current to the test transistor, and this is measured by meter ME1. The collector current is monitored using meter ME2. As the base current is varied, the collector current alters in sympathy with it, but the collector current is much larger than the base current. The device therefore provides current gain, and this could be less than 10 times for a low gain device, to as much as a thousand times for a very high gain transistor. The current gain is equal to the collector current divided by the base current.

It is important to realise that the current gain can vary considerably from one device of a particular type number to another device having the same type number. We are used to components with tolerances of about $\pm 1$ to $20 \%$, but the tolerance on the current gain of many transistors is more like $+150 \%$ and $-65 \%$. Also bear in mind that the current gain is not constant for any "real world" device, and varies considerably with changes in the collector current. To a much lesser extent it also changes with variations in the collector voltage. In general the current gain reduces as the collector current is reduced, but it also tends to fall away slightly at very high collector currents. A few radio frequency transistors are designed for automatic gain control circuits that use increased bias to reduce the gain on strong signal levels, but these are designed to have an unusual gain characteristic which gives a large reduction in gain as the collector current is increased.


Fig.5.1 The basic transistor test circuit

## Parameters

There are numerous parameters associated with transistors, and a brief explanation of some of the more common ones would be in order here.

## $h_{\text {fe }}$

This is the d.c. current gain, and should be specified at a particular collector to emitter voltage and collector current. As pointed out previously, the gain of a transistor varies significantly with changes in collector current, and an $h_{F E}$ figure is virtually meaningless unless a collector current is quoted. There is far less variation in gain with changes in collector to emitter voltage, provided this voltage is not extremely low. The absence of a specified collector voltage for the hre figure is therefore a much less serious omission. The current gains quoted in brief data are usually maximum and minimum figures, and for many devices a wide range of gain levels are acceptable. Something like a gain of between 125 and 900 would not be untypical. Sometimes an "average" or "typical"
figure is quoted, and it then needs to be borne in mind that the actual gain of any given device of that type might be well removed from the quoted figure.

## $h_{\text {fe }}$

This parameter differs from hre in that it is not the gain at d.c., but with a small a.c. signal.

## $\mathbf{V}_{\text {cbo }}$

This is the highest voltage that should be connected across the collector and base terminals with the emitter left open circuit (i.e. with the emitter left unconnected). Exceeding this voltage is likely to result in the component breaking down, and the result of this would almost certainly be to render it unusable.

## $V_{\text {Ceo }}$

The $\mathrm{V}_{\text {ceo }}$ rating is similar to the $\mathrm{V}_{\text {cbo }}$ type, but it is the maximum voltage that should be applied across the collector and emitter terminals with the base left open circuit. This voltage rating is usually somewhat less than the $\mathrm{V}_{\text {cbo }}$ rating, and is consequently the one that in most applications will determine the maximum usable supply voltage for the device in question.

## $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{j}}$

$\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{j}}$ is the junction temperature rating of the component. In other words, it is the maximum temperature to which the semiconductor material should be subjected. Exceeding this rating is very likely to result in serious damage to the device, and in extreme cases overheated semiconductors can explode with a loud "crack"! Even using a component just below its $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{j}}$ rating will probably significantly reduce its reliability. It is important to realise that this rating is the maximum temperature to which the chip of semiconductor material should be allowed to rise. There will not be perfect thermal contact between the chip and the outside of its encapsulation. Consequently, the case temperature must always be well below the $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{j}}$ rating in order to ensure that the chip also remains comfortably below the relevant temperature. For germanium transistors the $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{j}}$ figure is often quite low, but for silicon devices it can be (and often is) as high as 175 to 200 degrees Centigrade. Be warned that many
power devices run at temperatures that can lead to burnt fingers if you should touch them.
$\mathbf{P}_{\text {tot }}$
This is the maximum power rating of the device. As the base current is almost invariably very low in comparison to the collector current, for practical purposes the power dissipated by a transistor can be obtained by multiplying the collector to emitter voltage by the collector current. When dealing with $\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{to}}$ ratings you need to keep in mind that they are the maximum power rating under given sets of operating conditions. For a small signal device, the only operating condition specified might be the ambient temperature, which would normally be 25 degrees Centigrade. Running a transistor at its $\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{tot}}$ rating would then be acceptable, provided the ambient temperature would never be more than 25 degrees Centigrade. In practice this could probably not be guaranteed, and the power level would have to be kept substantially below the $\mathrm{P}_{\text {to }}$ rating. For power transistors the $\mathrm{P}_{\text {to }}$ rating is often given under the assumption that the device is mounted on a very large heatsink, or even a notional infinite heatsink. Under practical operating conditions the $\mathrm{P}_{\text {to }}$ power rating may not be usable. Without a heatsink, even $10 \%$ of the $P_{\text {it }}$ figure could be sufficient to cause a power device to overheat.

When dealing with $\mathrm{P}_{\text {to }}$ ratings remember that you must keep devices within their area of safe operation. In other words, there are often collector voltage and current combinations that give acceptable power ratings, but which will produce local "hot spots" in the semiconductor structure, causing the device to break down and be destroyed. The manufacturers full data should include a graph showing the area of safe operation.

## $V_{\text {ebo }}$

When forward biased, the base - emitter terminals of a transistor behave very much like a forward biased diode junction. No significant current flows until the forward threshold voltage of about 0.6 volts is exceeded, after which quite a modest increase in voltage will cause a large current to flow. The base-emitter junction also operates very much like an ordinary diode if it is reverse biased. No significant current flows until the break-
down voltage is reached, and then the device avalanches. This breakdown voltage is quite low for most transistors, with somewhere between 5 and 8 volts being the norm. Like a reverse biased diode or zener diode, exceeding the breakdown voltage will not result in any damage to the device provided the current flow is limited to a safe level.

The $\mathrm{V}_{\text {Ebo }}$ is the reverse breakdown voltage rating of the transistor. It is measured with the collector left open circuit, but connecting the collector into circuit will not usually have any significant affect on this rating. Although this rating might seem of only academic importance, it should be kept in mind that where capacitive coupling is used into the base of a transistor, it can be reverse biased by strong signals of the appropriate type. This is not likely to occur in applications such as audio amplification, but it can easily occur in oscillator circuits. Due to the relatively low breakdown voltage, this can result in some oscillator circuits not operating in the expected manner.

Ic
The Ic rating is the maximum collector current that the component can safely handle. This is normally quoted in the form of the maximum continuous current that can be safely accommodated. However, for some medium power devices intended for switching applications it is a figure for pulsed operation that is quoted. Transistors (and many other semiconductor devices) can readily withstand pulses of high current, and a maximum figure for pulsed operation will therefore be many times higher than the continuous current rating. As a point of interest, pulses of high voltage, even if extremely brief, are virtually certain to damage transistors and most other semiconductor devices.

## $f_{T}$

This is the transition frequency, which is merely the frequency at which the current gain of the device falls to unity. This is normally quoted for the device when it is operated in the common emitter amplifying mode. This is an important parameter, as it obviously gives a clear indication of the maximum frequency at which the device is likely to provide a useful amount of amplification. Apart from indicating the frequency at which
the current gain falls to zero, it also shows the maximum gain that can be achieved at lower frequencies. The maximum gain possible at lower frequencies is equal to the transition frequency divided by the frequency at which a gain figure is required. A device having an $\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{T}}$ of 300 MHz for instance, would have a gain of 30 at $10 \mathrm{MHz}(300 \mathrm{MHz}$ divided by 10 MHz equals 30$)$. This is an over simplification in that it assumes the transistor has infinite current gain. The gain at low frequencies is obviously limited by the $h_{\text {FE }}$ figure of the component.

## I ceo

This is merely the leakage current of the transistor. In other words, it is the current that flows between the collector and emitter terminals with the base terminal left open circuit. This parameter is very temperature dependent, but for a silicon device it is normally under one microamp and totally insignificant. It can be quite high for germanium transistors, especially certain power types (although these are now long obsolete).

## $\mathbf{V}_{\text {cE(sat) }}$

The $\mathrm{V}_{\text {CE(sat }}$ parameter is more usually just referred to as the saturation voltage. If a strong base current is applied to a transistor connected to operate as a simple common emitter switching stage, the transistor will switch on and provide a very low output voltage. The $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{CE}(\text { sat })}$ rating is a notional minimum collector voltage that can be achieved with the device in this simple switching mode. In reality it is not the lowest collector voltage that can be achieved. If a steadily increasing forward bias is applied to a common emitter switch, the collector voltage will rapidly fall to a low level, and thereafter it will reduce very gradually. The saturation voltage is a potential that is into the part of the transfer characteristic where collector voltage has "bottomed out", but it is not usually the absolute minimum collector voltage that can be achieved.

## ton

When a base current is applied to a transistor it takes a certain amount of time for the device to respond to it and switch on. This is the time specified in the ton parameter. Like $\mathrm{V}_{\text {CE(sal), }}$, this is a parameter that is mostly only of importance in logic and other switching applications.

This is similar to ton, but it is the time taken for the transistor to switch off once its base current has been removed. Due to storage effects, the toff time for a transistor that has been biased into saturation is much longer than the ton time.

## Amplifying Modes

There are three basic amplifying modes for transistors: the common emitter, common base, and common collector (emitter follower) modes. The common emitter type is probably the most frequently used of these modes, and it is the one which has the most useful characteristics for general use. This mode is shown in Figure 5.2. The name "common emitter" is derived from the fact that the emitter terminal is common to both the input and output signals. R2 is the collector load resistor and R1 provides a base bias to TR1 that results in a collector voltage of about half the supply potential. This is the most basic form of biasing, and there are more complex forms of biasing for this amplifying mode.


Cl and C 2 provide d.c. blocking at the input and output of the circuit. An a.c. input signal has the effect of causing TR1 to conduct more or less heavily, producing variations in the output voltage. The common emitter mode provides input and output impedance figures that are not usually very different from one another, and are usually several kilohms. The voltage gain is quite high, and at audio frequencies a voltage gain of over 40 dB ( 100 times) is easily achieved. This gives a high level of power gain. The signal undergoes an inversion through a common emitter amplifier.

TR1 is shown as an n.p.n. device in Figure 5.2, but the same configuration will operate properly using a p.n.p. transistor if the supply polarity is reversed, as shown in Figure 5.3. The same is true for the other two amplifying modes.


Selecting suitable values for R1 and R2 is very straightforward. Their values are dependent on the supply voltage and the required quiescent collector current for TR1. Suppose that a supply potential of 9 volts will be used, and that the required
collector current is 3 milliamps ( 0.003 amps ). A potential of 4.5 volts is needed across R2 (half the supply voltage). From Ohm's Law the value of R2 can therefore be calculated, and is equal to 4.5 volts divided by 0.003 amps . This works out at 1500 ohms, or 1.5 k in other words. Multiplying this value by the typical current gain of TR1 gives a suitable value for R1. With a typical current gain of (say) 200 at a collector current of 3 milliamps, 300 k would be a suitable value for R 1 . The biasing is stabilised to a certain extent by negative feedback, but using a transistor that has a wide $h_{\text {FE re range a high degree of }}$ accuracy can not be guaranteed.

At audio frequencies the approximate input impedance of the amplifier is given by this formula:

$$
\mathrm{Z}_{\mathrm{in}}=(25 / \text { collector } I \text { in } \mathrm{mA}) \mathrm{h}_{\mathrm{FE}}
$$

For our example amplifier we must first divide 25 by the collector current of 3 milliamps. This gives an answer of 8.33 , and multiplying this by the $h_{\text {FE }}$ of 200 gives an input impedance of 1667 ohms ( 1.67 k ). It will be apparent from this that the higher the hre, the higher the input impedance. Conversely, the higher the collector current, the lower the input impedance.

The approximate voltage gain of the amplifier is given by this formula:

$$
\text { V. Gain }=\text { col load } R /(25 / c o l I \text { in } m A)
$$

Dividing 25 by the collector current again gives an answer of 8.33. Dividing the collector load resistance by this figure then gives a voltage gain of about 180 times.

## Common Base

Figure 5.4 shows the circuit diagram for a common base amplifier. This configuration has similarities to the common emitter type. In this case though, the base is decoupled by C 2 so that it is held at a fixed voltage and is effectively common to both the input and output terminals. An emitter resistor is added so that the input signal can be coupled to the emitter terminal of TR1. As in the common emitter mode, the input signal

produces variations in the base - emitter voltage of the transistor, causing variations in the output voltage. In this case it is the base that is held at a fixed potential and the emitter voltage that is varied, rather than the other way round.

This gives the two types of amplifier very different characteristics though. The voltage gain is very good in the common base mode, but the circuit is really acting as a sort of step-up transformer. The input impedance of the circuit is quite low (typically about 100 to 200 ohms), and the output impedance is quite high. This gives only a low level of power gain. The input and output of the circuit are in-phase, and this contributes to the good performance of this mode at high frequencies.

## Emitter Follower

Figure 5.5 shows the circuit diagram for an emitter follower stage. This type of amplifier has a voltage gain that is fraction-


Fig.5.5 The circuit for a basic emitter follower stage
ally less than unity, and it provides no phase shift. An amplifier that provides no voltage amplification may seem to be of no practical value, but the salient point is that it provides a large amount of current amplification. A circuit of this type can therefore be used as a buffer stage to match a high impedance signal source to a much lower impedance load.

An emitter follower stage has an output impedance that is approximately equal to the source impedance divided by the current gain of the transistor. The emitter load resistor (R3) must be chosen to provide a current flow that is at least equal to the required peak output current. The input impedance of the amplifier is roughly equal to the current gain of the transistor multiplied by R3. Accurate biasing will be obtained if R1 and R2 have the same value, and this value is no more than onetenth of the input impedance to TR1. Unfortunately, this results in R1 and R2 seriously shunting the input of the amplifier,
giving the amplifier as a whole an input impedance that is much lower than the input impedance of TR1. The input impedance is equal to the parallel resistance of R1 and R2 (i.e. (R1 $\times$ $R 2)(R 1+R 2)$ ).

This severely reduces the efficiency of the circuit, and these days emitter follower amplifiers are little used in this form. Buffer amplifiers based on operational amplifiers are the normal choice. Operational amplifiers have very high input resistances that enable high value bias resistors to be used with no risk of the amplifier shunting them and impairing the accuracy of the biasing. Common emitter stages are mainly used in applications where they can be direct coupled to the previous stage in a circuit, with C1, R1, and R2 being omitted. This avoids the inefficiencies introduced by the inclusion of the bias resistors.

## Darlington Pair

Transistors are sometimes used in pairs in the manner shown in Figure 5.6. This configuration is known as a 'Darlington Pair'. The amplified current of one transistor is fed to the base of the


Fig.5.6 The Darlington Pair configuration
second device, giving what is effectively a single transistor having a current gain that is equal to the product of the two individual current gains. In this way an effective current gain of many thousands can be obtained. This configuration is most common in high power emitter follower stages, and power Darlington devices are readily available. Low power Darlington devices are also produced, but this configuration is generally less effective in low power applications, where the input transistor operates at a very low current, making it relatively inefficient.

## Type Numbers

Although you could easily get the impression that transistor and diode type numbers are merely thought up at random by the component manufacturers, there is usually some "rhyme and reason" behind them. The amount of information contained in type numbers is strictly limited, and being realistic about it, there is no way large amounts of data about a device could be contained in a short type number. Type numbers often provide a small but useful amount of information though.

Many of the transistors and diodes used by U.K. hobbyists have European Pro Electron type numbers. This method of coding gives some basic information about the type of device concerned. The first letter indicates the material used as the basis of the device, and there are four letters currently in use. These letters, plus the materials they represent, are listed below.

A Germanium
B Silicon
C Gallium Arsenide
R Compound Materials
The second letter indicates the general type of the device (rectifier, power transistor, etc.). This is a list of the letters and corresponding device types.

| A | Small signal diode |
| :--- | :--- |
| B | Rectifier or variable capacitance diode |
| C | Small signal audio transistor |
| D | Power Transistor |


| E | Point contact diode |
| :--- | :--- |
| F | Low power high frequency transistor |
| G | Diode (oscillator, miscellaneous) |
| H | Diode (magnetic sensitive) |
| K | Hall Effect device (open magnetic circuit) |
| L | High frequency power transistor |
| M | Hall Effect device (closed magnetic circuit) |
| N | Opto-Isolator |
| P | Diode (radiation sensitive) |
| Q | Diode (radiation producing) |
| R | Special purpose device |
| S | Switching device (transistor or diode) |
| T | S.C.R. or triac |
| U | High voltage transistor |
| X | Rectifier or variable capacitance diode |
| Y | Power rectifier |
| Z | Zener diode |

Devices that have this method of coding include many popular transistors, such as the popular BC series, which are clearly silicon small signal audio types. Some components which have this method of coding have a third letter (e.g. BFY51) which indicates that the device has been designed for the more demanding industrial applications, but does not really seem to be of any great significance. The number which follows the letters would seem to be a serial number, and it therefore gives an indication of how old or recent in design the component happens to be. Note though, that some devices with quite high numbers are the same as older components, but have a different encapsulation.

## Gain Groups

A few transistors, and mainly the silicon low power audio types, have a letter at the end of the type number. This indicates the gain grouping of the device. The current gain parameter of many transistors is pretty vague, with minimum and maximum figures of perhaps 125 and 900 . Such wide tolerances can make it difficult to design circuits that will give predictable and repeatable results with any given device of that type. To minimise these problems some transistors are available in three
gain groups, as well as the standard (ungrouped) version. This applies mainly to devices in the $\mathrm{BC} 107 / 8 / 9$ and $\mathrm{BC} 177 / 8 / 9$ series, and their derivatives (BC547, BC557, etc.). The gaingrouped devices have an "A", "B", or "C" suffix. These indicate the following generally accepted gain ranges.

| A | 110 to 220 |
| :--- | :--- |
| B | 200 to 450 |
| C | 420 to 800 |

Some transistors which have 2 N series type numbers are also gain-grouped. Probably the best known example is the 2N2926, which was extremely popular at one time. The gain groupings for these devices are indicated by coloured spots, as detailed in this list

| Red | 55 to 100 |
| :--- | :--- |
| Orange | 90 to 180 |
| Yellow | 150 to 300 |
| Green | 235 to 470 |

A few transistors which have Pro Electron type numbers have a " $K$ " or " $L$ " suffix letter. This has nothing to do with gain grouping, and indicates that a different leadout configuration has been used. This method seems to have fallen from favour, and these days it would seem to be normal for devices having different leadout configurations to be given new type numbers, rather than modified versions of old ones.

## JEDEC Codes

JEDEC stands for "Joint Electronic Device Engineering Councils), and it is an American organisation. Devices having JEDEC type numbers accordingly have their origins in the U.S.A. These components are quite common in the U.K. though, and the JEDEC 1 N and 2 N series type numbers will be familiar to many readers (e.g. 1N4148 and 2N2926). These type numbers provide very little information about the components, but do have some significance. The number at the start of a JEDEC code is equal to one less than the number of leadout wires that the component possesses. It therefore gives some
indication of the device type, as detailed here.
1 A diode or other two lead device
2 A bipolar, unijunction, or field effect transistor, or some form of S.C.R.
3 A dual gate f.e.t. or other four lead type
4 or 5 Opto-isolator
The second digit is always an " N ", and is followed by a number having up to four digits. Devices are numbered in sequence as they are registered, and the type numbers give a rough guide to the relative ages of devices. A very few devices having "A" suffixes are available, and this simply indicates that they are improved versions of the original device. For instance, the 2 N 706 A is an improved version of the earlier 2 N 706 , and has a substantially different set of parameters.

## JIS Codes

JIS (Japanese Industry Standard) type numbers would seem to be something of a rarity in U.K. electronic component catalogues. Japanese transistors, diodes, etc. do not seem to find their way into many designs for the U.K. home constructor. The first digit of the type number indicates the number of leadout wires in much the same way as the initial digit in a JEDEC type number (i.e. the number is one less than the number of leadout wires). The next two digits are letters which indicate the general type of the component. This is a list of the letters and the types of component they represent.

| SA | PNP transistor or Darlington pair (high frequency) |
| :--- | :--- |
| SB | PNP transistor or Darlington pair (low frequency) |
| SC | NPN transistor or Darlington Pair (high frequency) |
| SD | NPN transistor or Darlington pair (low frequency) |
| SE | Diodes |
| SF | SCRs (thyristors) |
| SG | Gunn diodes |
| SH | Unijunction transistors |
| SJ | Pchannel f.e.t.s (including power f.e.t.s) |
| SK | N channel f.e.t.s (including power f.e.t.s) |
| SM | SCRs (triacs) |

The final part of the type number is a serial number of up to four digits in length. You may occasionally encounter JIS devices which have an extra letter at the end of the type number. This apparently indicates that the device has been approved by a Japanese organisation. An " N " for instance, indicates that it has been approved by a broadcasting station. Note that on actual devices the first two digits often seem to be absent. This is not particularly important since the first digit can be ascertained by counting the leadout wires, and the second digit is invariably an " S ". There is only a risk of confusion if you fail to realise that the type number is of the abridged JIS variety.

## Manufacturers Digits

Not all semiconductors conform to any of these methods of numbering, and some are sold under manufacturers own type numbers. The first two to four letters then indicate the manufacturer concerned, plus (possibly) some general indication as to the type of device concerned or its encapsulation. This is a list of the main manufacturers and their code letters.

| MJ | Motorola (metal cased power transistor) |
| :--- | :--- |
| MJE | Motorola (plastic cased power transistor) |
| MPS | Motorola (plastic cased low power transistor) |
| MRF | Motorola (high frequency or microwave transistor) |
| RCA | RCA |
| RCS | RCA |
| TIP | Texas Instruments (plastic cased power transistor) |
| TIPL | Texas Instruments (planar power transistor) |
| TIS | Texas Instruments (low power transistor) |
| ZT | Ferranti |
| ZTX | Ferranti |

Tables
These tables provide basic data for a wide range of bipolar transistors.

## Transistor Characteristic Tables Small-medium Power Audio Transistors

| Device | Type | $V_{\text {CEO }}$ | $h_{\text {FE }}$ | $P_{\text {rot }}(\mathrm{mW}$ ) | $I C(m A)$ | Case |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| BC107 | npn | 45 | 110-450 | 300 | 100 | TO18 |
| BCl08 | npn | 20 | 110-800 | 300 | 100 | TO18 |
| BCl09 | npn | 20 | 110-800 | 300 | 100 | TO18 |
| BC117 | npn | 120 | 40 typ | 500 | 20 | TO39 |
| BC142 | npn | 60 | 20 min | 800 | 800 | TO39 |
| BC143 | pnp | 60 | 25 min | 800 | 800 | TO39 |
| BC169C | npn | 20 | 650 typ | 300 | 50 | TO92 |
| BC171 | npn | 45 | 110-450 | 300 | 200 | TO92a |
| BC177 | pnp | 45 | 125-500 | 300 | 100 | TO18 |
| BC178 | pnp | 25 | 125-500 | 300 | 100 | TO18 |
| BC179 | pnp | 25 | 240-500 | 300 | 100 | TO18 |
| BC182L | npn | 50 | 100-480 | 300 | 200 | T092 |
| BC183L | npn | 30 | 80-400 | 300 | 200 | TO92 |
| BC184L | npn | 30 | 125 min | 300 | 200 | TO92 |
| BC212L | pnp | 50 | 60-300 | 300 | 200 | TO92 |
| BC213L | pnp | 30 | 80-400 | 300 | 200 | TO92 |
| BC214L | pnp | 30 | 140-600 | 300 | 200 | TO92 |
| BC239 | npn | 45 | 290 typ | 360 | 100 | TO92h |
| BC327 | pnp | 45 | 100-600 | 625 | 500 | TO92b |
| BC337 | npn | 45 | 100-600 | 625 | 500 | TO92b |
| BC441 | npn | 60 | 40-250 | 1000 | 2000 | TO39 |
| BC461 | pnp | 60 | 40-250 | 1000 | 2000 | TO39 |
| BC547 | npn | 45 | 520 typ | 500 | 100 | TO92a |
| BC548 | npn | 30 | 520 typ | 500 | 100 | TO92a |
| BC549 | npn | 30 | 520 typ | 500 | 100 | TO92a |
| BC550 | npn | 45 | 520 typ | 500 | 200 | TO92a |
| BC557 | pnp | 45 | 240 typ | 500 | 100 | TO92a |
| BC558 | pnp | 30 | 240 typ | 500 | 100 | TO92a |
| BC559 | pnp | 30 | 240 typ | 500 | 100 | TO92a |
| BC560 | pnp | 45 | 240 typ | 500 | 200 | TO92a |
| BCY70 | pnp | 40 | 300 typ | 360 | 200 | TO18 |
| BCY71 | pnp | 45 | 100-400 | 360 | 200 | TO18 |
| BFX29 | pnp | 60 | 125 typ | 600 | 600 | TO5 |
| BFX30 | pnp | 65 | 90 typ | 600 | 600 | TO5 |
| BFX84 | npn | 60 | 110 typ | 800 | 1000 | TO5 |
| BFX85 | npn | 60 | 140 typ | 800 | 1000 | TO5 |
| BFX87 | pnp | 50 | 125 typ | 600 | 600 | TO5 |
| BFX88 | pnp | 40 | 125 typ | 600 | 600 | TO5 |
| BFY50 | npn | 35 | 110 typ | 800 | 1000 | TO5 |


| Device | Type | $V_{\text {CEO }}$ | $h_{\text {FE }}$ | $P_{\text {pot }}(m W)$ | $l_{C}(m A)$ | Case |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| BFY51 | npn | 30 | 125 typ | 800 | 1000 | TO5 |
| BFY52 | npn | 20 | 142 typ | 800 | 1000 | TO5 |
| ZTX107 | npn | 50 | 240 typ | 300 | 100 | E-line |
| ZTX108 | npn | 30 | 240 typ | 300 | 100 | E-line |
| ZTX109 | npn | 30 | 410 typ | 300 | 100 | E-line |
| ZTX300 | npn | 25 | 150 typ | 300 | 500 | E-line |
| ZTX500 | pnp | 25 | 150 typ | 300 | 500 | E-line |
| ZTX650 | npn | 45 | 200 typ | 1500 | 2000 | E-line |
| ZTX651 | npn | 60 | 200 typ | 1500 | 2000 | E-line |
| ZTX750 | pnp | 45 | 200 typ | 1500 | 2000 | E-line |
| ZTX751 | pnp | 60 | 200 typ | 1500 | 2000 | E-line |
| 2N697 | npn | 40 | 75 typ | 600 | 500 | TO5 |
| 2N706 | npn | 20 | 20 min | 300 | 100 | TO18 |
| 2N1711 | npn | 30 | 200 typ | 800 | 1000 | TO5 |
| 2N1893 | npn | 80 | 80 typ | 800 | 500 | TO5 |
| 2N2219 | npn | 30 | 200 typ | 800 | 800 | TO5 |
| 2N2905 | pnp | 40 | $100-300$ | 600 | 600 | TO5 |
| 2N2906 | pnp | 40 | 80 typ | 400 | 600 | TO18 |
| 2N2907 | pnp | 40 | 200 typ | 400 | 600 | TO18 |
| 2N2926 | npn | 18 | $55-435$ | 200 | 100 | TO98 |
| 2N3702 | pnp | 25 | $60-300$ | 300 | 200 | TO92 |
| 2N3703 | pnp | 30 | $30-150$ | 300 | 200 | TO92 |
| 2N3704 | npn | 30 | $100-300$ | 360 | 800 | TO92 |
| 2N3705 | npn | 30 | $50-150$ | 360 | 800 | TO92 |
| 2N3706 | npn | 20 | 315 typ | 360 | 800 | TO92 |
| 2N3707 | npn | 30 | 250 typ | 250 | 30 | TO92 |
| 2N3708 | npn | 30 | 360 typ | 250 | 30 | TO92 |
| 2N3711 | npn | 30 | 420 typ | 250 | 30 | TO92 |
| 2N3903 | npn | 40 | 100 typ | 300 | 200 | TO92b |
| 2N3904 | npn | 40 | $100-300$ | 310 | 200 | TO92b |
| 2N3905 | pnp | 40 | 50 typ | 310 | 200 | TO92b |
| 2N3906 | pnp | 40 | $100-300$ | 310 | 200 | TO92b |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

The gain figures are mostly quoted at one or two milliamps for small devices, and a much higher current of around 100 milliamps for the medium power devices. The 2N3707 is designed for low current applications, and the gain is for a collector current of 100 microamps. The BC109, BC549, BC550, BC169, BC559, and BC560 are high gain low noise audio devices. The 2N697, 2N706, 2N2906, 2N2907, 2N2219, 2N2905, ZTX650, ZTX651, ZTX750, and ZTX751 are all high speed switching devices. All type are silicon transistors.

## Small-medium Power R.F. Transistors

| Device | Type | $V_{\text {CEO }}$ | $h_{\text {FE }}$ | $P_{\text {ToT }}(m W)$ | $l_{C}(m A)$ | $f_{T}(M H z)$ | Case |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| BF115 | npn | 30 | 40 typ | 145 | 30 | 230 | TO72a |
| BF173 | npn | 25 | 38 typ | 260 | 25 | 350 | TO72a |
| BF180 | npn | 20 | 13 typ | 150 | 200 | 325 | TO72 |
| BF182 | npn | 20 | 75 typ | 145 | 30 | 325 | TO72 |
| BF184 | npn | 20 | 75 typ | 145 | 30 | 150 | TO72a |
| BF185 | npn | 20 | 34 typ | 145 | 30 | 110 | TO72a |
| BF200 | npn | 20 | 13 typ | 150 | 20 | 325 | TO72 |
| BF254 | npn | 20 | 115 typ | 220 | 30 | 260 | TO92z |
| BF255 | npn | 20 | 67 typ | 220 | 30 | 260 | TO92z |
| BF257 | npn | 160 | 25 typ | 500 | 100 | 55 | TO39 |
| BF258 | npn | 250 | 25 typ | 800 | 100 | 55 | TO39 |
| BF259 | npn | 300 | 25 typ | 500 | 100 | 90 | TO39 |
| BF337 | npn | 225 | 20 typ | 800 | 100 | 80 | TO39 |
| BF420 | npn | 300 | 40 min | 830 | 25 | 60 | TO92a |
| BF421 | pnp | 300 | 40 min | 830 | 25 | 60 | TO92a |
| BF494 | npn | 20 | 115 typ | 300 | 30 | 260 | TO92k |
| BFR39 | npn | 80 | 50 typ | 800 | 1000 | 100 | TO92a |
| BFR40 | npn | 60 | 75 typ | 800 | 1000 | 100 | TO92a |
| BFR41 | npn | 50 | 100 typ | 800 | 1000 | 100 | TO92a |
| BFR79 | pnp | 80 | 50 typ | 800 | 1000 | 100 | TO92a |
| BFR80 | pnp | 60 | 75 typ | 800 | 1000 | 100 | TO92a |
| BFR81 | pnp | 50 | 100 typ | 800 | 1000 | 100 | TO92a |
| BFR90A | npn | 15 | 90 typ | 180 | 25 | 5000 | SOT-37 |
| BFY90 | npn | 15 | 52 typ | 200 | 50 | 1850 | TO72 |
| BSX20 | npn | 15 | 80 typ | 360 | 500 | 500 | TO18 |
| MPSH10 npn | 25 | 60 typ | 350 | 20 | 650 | TO92e |  |
| 2N2222A npn | 40 | 200 typ | 500 | 800 | 300 | TO18 |  |
| 2N2369A npn | 15 | 40 min | 360 | 200 | 500 | TO18 |  |
| 2N3866 | npn | 30 | 105 typ | 5000 | 400 | 700 | TO5 |

Due to the increased use of f.e.t.s, integrated circuits, and surface mount devices in radio frequency circuits, the range of readily available high frequency transistors seems to have drastically shrunk in recent years. Some of the devices listed here might therefore be difficult to obtain. All types are silicon transistors.

## Power Transistors

| Device | Type | $V_{\text {CEO }}$ | $h_{\text {FE }}$ | Prot(W) | Ic ( $A$ ) | $f_{T}(\mathrm{MHz})$ | Case |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| BD131 | npn | 45 | 20 min | 15 | 3 | 60 | TO126 |
| BD132 | pnp | 45 | 20 min | 15 | 3 | 60 | TO126 |
| BD135 | npn | 45 | 40-250 | 12.5 | 1.5 | 50 | TO126 |
| BD136 | pnp | 45 | 40-250 | 12.5 | 1.5 | 75 | TO126 |
| BD139 | npn | 80 | 100 typ | 8 | 1 | 250 | TO126 |
| BD140 | pnp | 80 | 100 typ | 8 | 1 | 75 | TO126 |
| BC437 | npn | 45 | 40 typ | 36 | 4 | 3 | TO126 |
| BD438 | pnp | 45 | 40 typ | 36 | 4 | 3 | TO126 |
| BD539C | $n \mathrm{n}$ | 100 | 30 typ | 45 | 5 | - | Plb |
| BC540C | pnp | 100 | 30 typ | 45 | 5 | - | Plb |
| BD679 | npn | 80 | 2200 typ | 40 | 6 | 0.06 | Plb |
| BD680 | pnp | 80 | 2200 typ | 40 | 6 | 0.06 | Plb |
| BD711 | npn | 100 | 25 typ | 75 | 12 | 3 | Plb |
| BD712 | pnp | 100 | 25 typ | 75 | 12 | 3 | Plb |
| BD911 | npn | 100 | 30 typ | 90 | 15 | 3 | Plb |
| BD912 | pnp | 100 | 30 typ | 90 | 15 | 3 | Plb |
| BU208 | npn | 1500 | 2.25 min | 12.5 | 5 | 7 | TO3 |
| MJ2501 | pnp | 80 | 1000 typ | 150 | 10 | 1 | TO3 |
| MJ2955 | npn | 60 | 45 typ | 150 | 15 | 4 | TO3 |
| MJ3001 | $\mathrm{np} \mathrm{n}^{\text {n }}$ | 80 | 1000 typ | 150 | 10 | 1 | TO3 |
| MJE340 | npn | 300 | 150 typ | 20 | 0.5 | 20 | TO126 |
| MJE350 | pnp | 300 | 150 typ | 20 | 0.5 | 20 | TO1 26 |
| TIP31A | npn | 60 | 25 typ | 40 | 3 | 3 | Plb |
| T1P32A | pnp | 60 | 25 typ | 40 | 3 | 3 | Plb |
| T1P33A | npn | 60 | 75 typ | 80 | 10 | 3 | P3c |
| TIP34A | pnp | 60 | 75 typ | 80 | 10 | 3 | P3c |
| TIP41A | npn | 60 | 50 typ | 65 | 5 | 3 | Plb |
| TIP42A | pnp | 60 | 50 typ | 65 | 5 | 3 | Plb |
| T1P121 | npn | 80 | 1000 min | 65 | 5 | 1 | Plb |
| T1P122 | npn | 100 | 5000 typ | 65 | 5 | 5 | Plb |
| TIP126 | pnp | 80 | 1000 min | 65 | 5 | 1 | Plb |
| TIP127 | pnp | 100 | 5000 typ | 65 | 5 | 5 | Plb |
| TIP142 | npn | 100 | 3000 typ | 125 | 10 | - | P3c |
| TIP147 | pnp | 100 | 3000 typ | 125 | 10 | - | P3c |
| TIP2955 | pnp | 70 | 45 typ | 90 | 15 | 2 | P3c |
| TIP3055 | npn | 70 | 45 typ | 90 | 15 | 2 | P3c |
| 2N3054 | npn | 55 | 25 typ | 29 | 4 | 1 | TO3 |
| 2N3055 | npn | 60 | 45 typ | 115 | 15 | 0.8 | TO3 |
| 2N3772 | npn | 60 | 30 typ | 150 | 20 | 0.8 | TO3 |
| 2N3773 | npn | 140 | 40 typ | 150 | 16 | 0.2 | TO3 |
| 2N6609 | pnp | 140 | 40 typ | 150 | 16 | 0.2 | TO3 |

Note that the $\mathrm{V}_{\text {ceo }}$ figure for the BU208 is a non-repetitive peak value. Devices having hre figures of 1000 or more are power Darlington transistors. All types are silicon transistors. Many power devices have low $\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{T}}$ figures, and in some cases may not provide full gain over the entire audio band.

Figure 5.7 shows leadout details for a wide range of small bipolar transistors. Figure 5.8 provides leadout details for a number of power types. As is the convention, both show underside views of the components.

## FETs

Originally there was only one type of field effect transistor (f.e.t.), and this was the junction gate (Jfet). These have now been joined by various types of MOSFET, including power types such as VMOS and HMOS transistors. All these devices can operate in amplifying modes that are analogous to the common base, common emitter, and common collector modes. However, the terminals of field effect transistors are called the gate, source, and drain. The f.e.t. amplifying modes are therefore the common gate, common source, and common drain (source follower) types.

An essential difference between bipolar and field effect transistors is that whereas bipolar devices are current operated, field effect devices are voltage operated. In other words, it is the voltage applied to the gate of a field effect transistor that is of importance, not the gate current. The input resistances of field effect transistors are so high that the gate currents are extremely low indeed. The input resistance of a Jfet is usually in excess of one thousand megohms, while that of a MOSFET can often exceed one million megohms! While the input impedance at low frequencies is similarly high, it reduces substantially at medium and high frequencies due to the input capacitance. This is typically about 10p, but in the common source amplifying mode this is effectively multiplied by the gain of the device due to the Miller Effect.

Jfets and some MOSFETs are depletion mode devices. With a bipolar transistor the device is normally switched off, and it is turned on by applying a forward bias. A depletion mode field effect device is switched on quite hard with zero gate bias, and in normal operation it is given a reverse bias so that it can
COLDC

Fig.5.7 Base views for a wide range of small transistors


Fig.5.8 Underside views for most common power transistors
provide reasonably linear operation. This reverse bias is normally provided via a resistor in the source circuit, plus another resistor to bias the gate to the 0 volt supply rail, as in Figure 5.9. This is very much like the bias circuits used in valve circuits,

and in some respects the characteristics of field effect transistors are more like those of valves than those of bipolar devices.

Jfets are perhaps less popular than they once were, but they are still used in both audio and radio frequency circuits. MOSFETs are little used in audio frequency equipment, but appear in many pieces of radio frequency equipment. In particular, they are used in the r.f. and mixer stages of high frequency (h.f.), very high frequency (v.h.f.), and ultra high frequency (u.h.f.) radio receiving equipment. Good MOSFET r.f. and mixer stages can provide excellent large signal handling and noise performance.

As their name implies, dual gate MOSFETs have two gate terminals. Although one might reasonably expect that this would result in the output simply responding to the sum of the two input voltages, it does not work this way in practice. The gain from one gate to the output is controlled by the voltage at the other gate. In a radio receiver mixer stage application, feed-

ing the input signal to one gate and the oscillator signal to the other gate therefore gives the required complex mixing action needed to provide the heterodyne effect. Figure 5.10 shows the basic configuration for a dual gate MOSFET mixer. If a dual gate MOSFET is utilized in an r.f. stage, the input signal can be applied to one gate, with the other gate being given either a fixed bias level or being fed with a variable bias from the automatic gain control (a.g.c.) circuit.

Dual gate MOSFETs are depletion mode devices. Most of the single gate type now available seem to be "enhancement" mode MOSFETs, which are more like bipolar devices than the standard depletion mode devices. They are normally switched off, and require a forward bias to bring them into conduction. Being field effect devices, it is still the input voltage rather than the gate current that is of importance. It is transistors of this type that are used in CMOS logic integrated circuits incidentally. Many enhancement mode MOSFETs are designed for use in switching applications.

There are two main types of power MOSFET available, which are the VMOS and HMOS varieties. The HMOS type are often just referred to as "power MOSFETs". The VMOS transistors derive their name from their " V " shaped structure. Whereas ordinary field effect transistors have "on" resistances of about 100 to 500 ohms, the structure of VMOS transistors enables them to produce drain to source resistances of 2 ohms or less. This permits them to control quite high currents. Some devices are capable of controlling currents of several amps. HMOS devices have a different structure, but have broadly similar characteristics to VMOS devices.

Both types of power f.e.t. tend to be significantly more expensive than good quality bipolar power transistors capable of handling comparable power levels. Also, they are probably more easily damaged than bipolar power transistors. They do have a few distinct advantages though. Perhaps the most obvious one is the enormous power gain they provide. A swing of a few volts at a negligible current can control output powers of a hundred watts, or even more. Switching speeds are very fast for power devices. Thermal stability is another factor in their favour. As mentioned previously in this chapter, bipolar devices have to be operated in their so-called area of safe operation. Certain combinations of collector current and voltage cause what is termed "secondary breakdown", which results in local "hot spots" in the semiconductor structure, and the destruction of the device. With virtually all power f.e.t.s, any source voltage and current combinations that provide acceptable power dissipation figures are acceptable.

## FET Parameters

Obviously field effect transistors are very different to bipolar transistors in many respects, and accordingly they have a largely different set of parameters. This is a list of the main parameters, together with a brief explanation of each one.

## $f_{T}$

This is basically the same as the $f_{T}$ rating of a bipolar device, but it is, of course, the unity gain bandwidth in the common source amplifying mode (the equivalent of the bipolar common emitter mode).
$P_{\text {tot }}$
$\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{t}}$ is an exact equivalent to $\mathrm{P}_{\text {tot }}$ for a bipolar transistor (i.e. the maximum permissible power rating).
$V_{p}$
$\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{p}}$ is the pinch-off voltage. This is the reverse gate to source voltage needed to switch off a depletion mode field effect transistor. Obviously this parameter is not applicable to enhancement mode devices.

## $V_{G S}$

This is the maximum permissible gate to source voltage, and is roughly analogous to $\mathrm{V}_{\text {EBO }}$ for a bipolar transistor. However, no avalanche effect is obtained with field effect devices. Note that some power f.e.t.s (particular the VMOS variety) are protected by a zener diode against excessive gate voltages. In these cases the $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{Gs}}$ rating is the avalanche voltage of the zener protection diode.
$V_{\text {DG }}$
$V_{D G}$ is the maximum permissible drain to gate voltage, and is roughly equivalent to $\mathrm{V}_{\text {сво }}$ for a bipolar transistor.
$V_{D S}$
The maximum drain to source voltage, and the f.e.t. equivalent of $\mathrm{V}_{\text {ceo }}$.

## $\mathrm{C}_{\text {iss }}$

This is the input capacitance with the component used in the common source amplifying mode.

## gm

The $g_{m}$ rating is the small signal common source transconductance. As the f.e.t. method of gain measurement, this is roughly equivalent to $h_{\mathrm{FE}}$ for a bipolar transistor, but is only a rough equivalent. Remember that with a field effect transistor we are not dealing in terms of input and output current, but with input voltage and output current. This parameter is therefore a measurement of how much the output current changes with a given variation in the gate voltage. Conductance is similar to
resistance, but is essentially the inverse of it. It is a measure of how well something conducts electricity instead of a measurement of how much it resists a current flow. The unit of measurement used for conductance and transconductance was called the "mho", but it is now called the "siemens". The $\mathrm{g}_{\mathrm{m}}$ formula of current divided by voltage is the inverse of that used to calculate resistance using Ohm's Law. If a f.e.t. had a transconductance rating of 12 mS ( 12 milli siemens, or twelve thousandths of a siemens), a change in the gate voltage of one volt would result in the drain current changing by 12 milliamps.

## $V_{G S(t h)}$

This is the gate threshold voltage, and it only applies to enhancement mode devices. It is the forward bias voltage at which the device begins to switch on. This is similar to the 0.6 volts or thereabouts needed before a silicon bipolar transistor will start to turn on, but for enhancement mode f.e.t.s the turn on threshold voltage is generally about 0.8 to two volts.

## Idss

IDSs is the enhancement mode f.e.t. equivalent to leakage (ICEO) in a bipolar transistor. It is the drain current that flows with zero gate bias voltage. Even for power f.e.t. devices this figure is normally quite low (a few microamps or less), and it is not normally of any significance in practice.

## Igss

This parameter is the gate leakage current. It is merely the gate current that flows for a given gate voltage. Due to the very high input resistance of f.e.t.s this rating is normally no more than a nanoamp or two, but it can be a few microamps for power f.e.t.s under worst case conditions.

## ID

This parameter is normally only specified for power f.e.t.s, and it is the maximum permissible drain current.

## Idss

This is the drain current that flows through a depletion mode f.e.t. that is subjected to zero gate to source voltage. Using this figure and the $\mathrm{g}_{\mathrm{m}}$ parameter it is possible to calculate the drain
current for other gate bias levels. However, the tolerances on both $\mathrm{g}_{\mathrm{m}}$ and $\mathrm{I}_{\text {Dss }}$ ratings are often quite high. The tolerance on the $\mathrm{I}_{\text {ds }}$ parameter in particular is usually quite large, with the maximum figure being perhaps as much as ten times higher than the minimum one. This makes accurate biasing of many depletion mode f.e.t.s a difficult task.

## ton

This is simply the switch on time for the device.
tor
The $\mathrm{t}_{\text {off }}$ rating is the switch off time for the device. Unlike bipolar switch on/off time ratings, the turn on and turn off delays for f.e.t.s are often the same.

RDS
This is simply the drain to source resistance with the device fully switched on.

## $V_{\text {DS(on) }}$

This could reasonably be regarded as the power f.e.t. equivalent to saturation voltage. It is the drain to source voltage with the device heavily forward biased and conducting a specified current.

In the "Type" column " N " is for N channel, P is for P channel, "Jfet" is a junction gate f.e.t., DG-MOS is a dual gate MOSFET, and DG-GAS is a dual gate gallium arsenide device. The BFW10 is a low noise device for low frequency applications, and the 3SK134 is a very low noise high frequency device (noise figure of 1.3 dB at 900 MHz ). Many of the older types (e.g. 3N140 and 40673) are now difficult to obtain, and expensive. They are not recommended for use in new designs.

## FET Characteristics

## Small Signal FETs

| Device | Type | $V_{D S}$ | $g_{m}(m S)$ | $P_{\text {Tor }}(m W)$ | $l_{D s s}(m A)$ | Case |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| BF244A | N-Jfet | 30 | 4.5 typ | 360 | 25 | TO92d |
| BF244B | N-Jfet | 30 | $3-6.5$ | 360 | 25 | TO92d |
| BFW10 | N-Jfet | 30 | 3.2 typ | 300 | 20 | TO12 |
| MPF102 | N-Jfet | 25 | 1.6 typ | 200 | 20 | TO92c |
| J109 | N-Jfet | 25 | 17 typ | 360 | 40 | TO92c |
| J112 | N-Jfet | 35 | 6 typ | 360 | 5 | TO92c |
| 2N3819 | N-Jfet | 25 | $2-6.5$ | 200 | 20 | TO92d |
| 2N3820 | P-Jfet | 20 | $0.8-5$ | 200 | 15 | TO92d |
| 2N3823E | N-Jfet | 30 | 1.8 min | 250 | 20 | TO106f |
| 2N4303 | N-Jfet | 30 | 2 min | 300 | 10 | TO106f |
| 2N4416 | N-Jfet | 30 | - | 300 | 5 | TO72k |
| 2N4220 | N-Jfet | 30 | - | 300 | 0.5 | TO72j |
| 2N4861 | N-Jfet | 30 V | - | 360 | 8 | TO18n |
| 2N5457 | N-Jfet | 25 | $1-5$ | 200 | 5 | TO92c |
| 2N5458 | N-Jfet | 25 | $1.5-5.5$ | 200 | 9 | TO92c |
| 2N5459 | N-Jfet | 25 | $2-6$ | 200 | 16 | TO92c |
| 2N5460 | P-Jfet | 40 | 1 | 310 | 5 | TO92p |
| 2N5461 | P-Jfet | 40 | - | 310 | 2 | TO92p |
| 3N140 | DG-MOS | 20 | 10 typ | 330 | 30 | TO72f |
| 3SK88 | DG-MOS | 20 | 17 typ | 200 | 6 | FET-37 |
| 3SK124 | DG-GAS | 10 | 30 typ | 200 | 40 | FET-37 |
| 40673 | DG-MOS | 20 | 12 typ | 330 | 35 | TO72f |

Power MOSFETS

| Device | Type | $V_{D S}$ | $g_{m}(m S)$ | $P$ Tor $(m W)$ | $l_{\text {Dss }}(m A)$ | Case |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| BUZ10 | N-PMOS | 50 | 3000 typ | 70 | 20 | Pld |
| BUZ31 | N-PMOS | 200 | 5000 typ | 75 | 12.5 | Pld |
| IRF540 | N-PMOS | 100 | $10 S$ typ | 125 | 27 | Pld |
| IRF630 | N-PMOS | 200 | 4800 typ | 75 | 9 | Pld |
| IRF640 | N-PMOS | 200 | $10 S$ typ | 125 | 18 | Pld |
| IRF740 | N-PMOS | 400 | 7000 typ | 125 | 10 | Pld |
| IRF830 | N-PMOS | 500 | 3250 typ | 75 | 4.5 | Pld |
| IRF840 | N-PMOS | 500 | 6500 typ | 125 | 8 | Pld |
| VN10KM | N-VMOS | 60 | 200 typ | 1 | 0.5 | TO92d |
| VN46AF | N-VMOS | 40 | 250 typ | 12.5 | 2 | Plc |
| VN66AF | N-VMOS | 60 | 250 typ | 12.5 | 2 | Plc |
| VN67AF | N-VMOS | 60 | 250 typ | 15 | 2 | Plc |
| VN88AF | N-VMOS | 80 | 250 typ | 12.5 | 2 | Plc |
| 2SJ48 | P-PMOS | 120 | 1000 typ | 100 | 7 | TO3v |
| 2SJ49 | P-PMOS | 140 | 1000 typ | 100 | 7 | TO3v |
| 2SJ50 | P-PMOS | 160 | 1000 typ | 100 | 7 | TO3v |


| 2SJ83 | P-PMOS | 160 | 1000 typ | 100 | 7 | FPACK |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 2SJ114 | P-PMOS | 200 | 1000 typ | 100 | 8 | TO3w |
| 2SJ160 | P-PMOS | 120 | 1000 typ | 100 | 7 | TO3w |
| 2SJ161 | P-PMOS | 140 | 1000 typ | 100 | 7 | TO3w |
| 2SJ162 | P-PMOS | 160 | 1000 typ | 100 | 7 | TO3w |
| 2SK133 | N-PMOS | 120 | 1000 typ | 100 | 7 | TO3v |
| 2SK134 | N-PMOS | 140 | 1000 typ | 100 | 7 | TO3v |
| 2SK135 | N-PMOS | 160 | 1000 typ | 100 | 7 | TO3v |
| 2SK227 | N-PMOS | 160 | 1000 typ | 100 | 7 | TO3v |
| 2SK1056 | N-PMOS | 120 | 1000 typ | 100 | 7 | TO3w |
| 2SK1057 | N-PMOS | 140 | 1000 typ | 100 | 7 | TO3w |
| 2SK1058 | N-PMOS | 160 | 1000 typ | 100 | 7 | TO3w |

In the "Type" column " N " indicates an N channel device, " $P$ " indicates a P channel device, "VMOS" indicates a VMOS device, and "PMOS" is for an HMOS device or some other form of power MOSFET.

Figure 5.11 shows leadout details for a wide range of low lower field effect transistors, and Figure 5.12 shows base views for a number of common power types. Transistors intended for surface mounting are now starting to appear in component catalogues, and Figure 5.13 shows leadout details for two common forms of surface mount transistor (one f.e.t. and one bipolar type).

## Unijunctions

Although unijunction transistors were very popular at one time, they have been largely superseded by integrated circuit oscillators and timers. They are little used these days, and are bordering on obsolescence. They can still be obtained, but few are now available, and supplies may well "dry-up" in the not too distant future. Unijunctions are not something that could be recommended for use in new designs.

Unijunction transistors have little in common with bipolar or field effect types. They have three leadout wires and are housed in standard transistor encapsulations, but that is where the similarities end. Unijunctions are not used in amplifiers, and can not provide gain. They have two base terminals and an emitter terminal. Unijunctions are normally used in a relaxation oscillator, as in the example circuit of Figure 5.14. Here C 1 charges by way of R1 until a certain voltage is reached, and then TR1 "fires" and rapidly discharges C 1 . When Cl is almost


Fig.5.11 Base views for a range of small f.e.t.s
fully discharged TR1 switches off again, C1 commences to charge via $\mathbb{R} 1$ once more, and so on. This gives a high impedance non-linear sawtooth waveform at the emitter of TR1, and low impedance pulse signals at the base 1 and base 2 terminals.

As one would expect, the parameters in data sheets for unijunction transistors are totally different to those for ordinary bipolar types. This is a list and brief explanation of the main ones.
$V_{B B}$
The maximum permissible base 1 to base 2 voltage.


Fig.5.12 Base views for common power f.e.t.s
$I_{P}$
This is the peak point current, which is the minimum emitter current needed to trigger the device. If the timing resistor value in a unijunction relaxation oscillator is made too high, this


Fig.5.13 Leadout details for two types of surface mount transistor


Fig.5.14 The circuit for a basic unijunction relaxation oscillator
current will not be reached and oscillation will not occur.

## Iv

Iv is the valley point current, or the minimum current needed to hold the device in the triggered state in other words.

## IE

The maximum emitter current rating. This is a peak rating, not a continuous one.

Ptot
The maximum dissipation for the device.

## $\mathbf{R}_{\text {bb }}$

The base 1 to base 2 resistance.

## n

This is the intrinsic stand-off ratio. Under static conditions a unijunction transistor is effectively a pair of resistors connected in series across the two base terminals. The emitter connects to the junction of the two resistors via a diode. The intrinsic stand-off ratio is the base 1 to emitter resistance divided by the base 1 to base 2 resistance. The device "fires" when the diode at the emitter terminal becomes forward biased, and this depends on the supply voltage and the intrinsic stand-off ratio. It is approximately equal to the supply voltage multiplied by the intrinsic stand-off ratio, plus about 0.6 volts to allow for the forward threshold voltage of the diode.

This table provides basic data for three common unijunction transistors.

| Device | $V_{B B}$ | $V_{E B}$ | $R_{B B}(k)$ | $n$ | $I_{P}(\mu A)$ | Case |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| TIS43 | 35 | 30 | $4-9.1$ | $0.55-0.82$ | 5 | TO92e |
| 2N246 | 35 | 30 | $4.7-9.1$ | $0.56-0.75$ | 5 | TO18u |
| 2N4871 | 35 | 30 | $4-9.1$ | $0.7-0.85$ | 5 | TO92g |

Figure 5.15 provides leadout details for these three unijunction transistors.


## Diodes

Rectifiers and zener diodes are covered in Chapter One in the section dealing with power supply circuits, and will not be dealt with again here. However, the subject of ordinary diodes will be dealt with here. I am sometimes asked to explain where the dividing line is drawn between rectifiers and diodes. Rectifiers are used in power supplies and other high current applications, whereas diodes are used in low current circuits. There is no rigidly defined operating current that separates diodes from rectifiers, but it seems to be generally accepted that a component that can handle currents of one amp or more is a rectifier, and one that can not handle currents of at least something approaching this figure is a diode. Here we will only consider devices that can deal with currents of up to a few hundred milliamps.

A silicon diode requires a forward potential of about 0.6 volts before it will start to conduct significantly. Only a marginally higher voltage is then sufficient to make it conduct heavily. In some applications this forward voltage drop of about 0.6 to 0.7 volts is of no consequence, but sometimes it is a major drawback. The reverse resistance of silicon diodes is very high, and is generally in the region of 100 megohms or more.

Although germanium transistors became obsolete many years ago, germanium diodes are still in everyday use. The reason for this is their lower forward voltage drop. Germanium diodes start to conduct even with quite a low forward voltage, albeit with a rather high forward resistance. As the forward voltage is increased, the forward resistance steadily falls. At about 0.1 to 0.2 volts the forward resistance becomes very low. This is still far from a perfect diode characteristic, but for many purposes, including a.m./f.m. detection, a germanium diode is preferable to a silicon type. When using germanium diodes it must be borne in mind that they generally have much lower reverse resistances than silicon types. The reverse resistance is usually several hundred kilohms, but for some germanium diodes it can be under 100 kilohms.

There have been various attempts to produce "improved" diodes having lower forward voltage drops, but the only other type in widespread use is the Schottky diode. This is the same type of diode that is used within 74LS** series TTL chips. It is a type of silicon diode, but with a lower forward conduction threshold voltage that is typically about 0.4 volts. In other words, the forward conduction characteristic of a Schottky diode is roughly half way between that of a germanium diode and a silicon type. Schottky diodes are very fast in operation, and many will operate at frequencies of several gigahertz (i.e. several thousand megahertz).

Most diodes have a coloured band around one end of the case to denote the cathode (+) leadout wire. A few types have multiple coloured bands, and these are a form of colour coding which show the component's type number. In practice you are only likely to encounter IN4148 diodes which have this type of marking. The "4148" part of the type number is marked using the method of coding adopted for bands one and two of resistor colour codes. The yellow band should be thicker than the others, and this band is next to the cathode leadout wire (Fig.5.16).

## Parameters

This is a list of the parameters you are likely to encounter in short-form data sheets for diodes, complete with a brief explanation of each one.


Fig.5.16 Diode polarity markings

## PIV

This is the "peak inverse voltage". As its name suggests, this is the peak reverse bias voltage that should be applied to the device. Semiconductors tend to be quite voltage conscious, and even slightly exceeding this voltage rating for a very brief period of time could result in the device being damaged. Remember that the peak voltage in an a.c. signal is about 1.41 times its r.m.s. level.

## If

The $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{f}}$ rating is the maximum average current that should be allowed to flow with the component forward biased. As already mentioned, semiconductor devices are easily damaged by excessive voltages, but they are much more tolerant of high current pulses. A diode that can handle an average forward current of (say) 50 milliamps may well be able to handle pulses of up to about ten times this figure, provided they are suitably brief. However, where high peak currents are involved
it would be safer to use a rectifier that can comfortably accommodate these high currents.

## $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{R}}$

This is the maximum reverse current that will flow with a given reverse bias voltage. This figure is normally quoted at a potential which is equal to or very close to the component's PIV rating. For silicon diodes it is usually a fraction of a microamp, but for germanium types it can be as high as a few hundred microamps.

## $\mathbf{V}_{\mathrm{F}}$ drop

The $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{F}}$ drop figure is often quoted for rectifiers, and is the maximum voltage drop through the device when it is forward biased by a specified current. This current is sometimes the $\mathbf{I}_{f}$ rating of the component, but it may be a typical operating current. This could be just a milliamp or two.

## $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{rr}}$

This is the recovery time of the component, or the time it takes to switch off in other words. Fast recovery diodes generally have $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{r}}$ times of around 10 to 40 ns .

## $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{j}}$

The $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{j}}$ rating is the maximum safe junction temperature. This is not the same as the maximum safe case temperature, and the latter is several degrees lower than the $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{j}}$ rating.

This table gives brief data for some common types of diode.

| Device | Type | $P I V$ | $I_{F}(m A)$ | Applications |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| AA119 | G Point Contact | 45 | 35 | AM/FM detector |
| BA244 | S | 20 | 100 | Fast switching |
| BA481 | Schottky barrier | 4 | 30 | UHF mixer |
| BAR28 | Schottky barrier | 70 | - | Fast - low V drop |
| BAT85 | Schottky barrier | 30 | 200 | AM/FM detector |
| BAW62 | S Epitaxial Planar | 75 | 100 | Fast logic |
| BAX13 | S Whiskerless | 50 | 75 | Fast switching |
| BAX16 | S Whiskerless | 150 | 200 | General purpose |
| BY206 | S Double diff | 350 | 400 | Switching PSUs |
| HSCH1001 | Schottky barrier | 60 | 15 | Fast - low V drop |
| OA47 | G Gold bonded | 25 | 110 | Low V drop switching |


| OA90 | G Point contact | 30 | 10 | AM/FM detector |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| OA91 | G Point contact | 115 | 50 | General purpose |
| OA95 | G Point contact | 115 | 50 | General purpose |
| OA200 | S Alloy junction | 50 | 80 | General purpose |
| OA202 | S Alloy junction | 150 | 40 | General purpose |
| ZS120 | S Alloy junction | 50 | 250 | General purpose |
| IN914 | S Whiskerless | 100 | 75 | Fast switching |
| IN914B | S Whiskerless | 75 | 75 | Low V drop |
| IN916 | S Whiskerless | 50 | 250 | Low cap switching |
| IN4148 | S Whiskerless | 100 | 75 | Fast switching |
| IS921 | S Diffused | 100 | 200 | General purpose |

In the "Type" column " S " indicates a silicon device, and " G " indicates a germanium diode. Schottky diodes are a form of silicon diode.

## SCRs

A silicon controlled rectifier (SCR) is a switching device. Unlike an ordinary rectifier, it does not normally conduct between its cathode and anode terminals when they are forward biased. An SCR has an additional terminal called the "gate", and it is only when this is forward biased with respect to the cathode that the device is triggered into conduction. The voltage drop through the device is rather higher than that through a normal silicon rectifier, being about twice as high at around 1.2 to two volts. Once an SCR, or thyristor as they are popularly known, has been triggered, it will remain in a state of conduction until the anode to cathode current falls below a certain level. Therefore, removing the gate bias will not switch off a thyristor if the anode to cathode current is above this hold-on threshold level. There are actually a few special types called "gate turn-off" thyristors that can be switched off via the gate, but these are something of a rarity.

The gate pulse only needs to be quite short, with a one microsecond pulse generally being sufficient to trigger a thyristor reliably. The gate current needed to provide triggering varies considerably from one type to another. Some of the older devices require as much as 20 to 30 milliamps to guarantee proper triggering. This still represents a respectable level of gain for what are essentially power devices that are normally used to control currents of around one to 10 amps . However, some modern thyristors will trigger reliably at gate currents of
well under one milliamp.
There are a number of important thyristor parameters to be found in data on these devices. A list of the main parameters, together with a short explanation of each one, is provided below.
$V_{r}$
This is the maximum reverse voltage rating of the device (i.e. the maximum voltage with the anode taken negative of the cathode). This is usually a peak voltage, whereas a.c. voltages are generally given as r.m.s. figures. The peak voltage is equivalent to about 1.41 times the r.m.s. level (e.g. about 324 volts for the 230 volt U.K. mains supply).

## $V_{t}$

This is the maximum forward voltage rating (i.e. the maximum voltage with the anode taken positive of the cathode).

## It

$\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{f}}$ is the maximum forward current that the device can handle. It is either an average or r.m.s. figure, and the peak level can safely be very much higher than this.
$V_{g}$
The $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{g}}$ rating is the maximum gate voltage that will be needed in order to trigger the component. This is typically about 1 volt or so.

## $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{g}}$

This is the maximum gate current required to trigger the component. For older and higher power devices this figure can be quite high, at about 10 to 30 milliamps. For many recent thyristors it is much lower than this, at typically only about 200 microamps.

[^0]$V_{\text {fim }}$
As pointed out previously, there is a voltage drop through a thyristor that is about 1.2 volts or so. $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{fm}}$ is the maximum forward voltage drop with the device operating at maximum current.

This table provides basic data for some common thyristors.

| Device | $V_{r}(V)$ | $I_{f}(A)$ | $I_{g}(m A)$ | $V_{g}(V)$ | $I_{\text {hm }}(m A)$ | Case |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| BT109 | 500 | 4 | 10 | 2 | 3 | TO220 |
| BT149B | 200 | 0.64 | 0.2 | 0.8 | 5 | TO92t |
| TAG84 | 600 | 0.64 | 0.2 | 0.8 | 5 | TO92t |
| C106D | 400 | 2.5 | 0.2 | 0.8 | 3 | TO220 |
| C106M | 600 | 2.5 | 0.2 | 0.8 | 3 | TO220 |
| C116D | 400 | 5 | 20 | 1.5 | 40 | TO220 |
| C126D | 400 | 7.5 | 30 | 1.5 | 40 | TO220 |
| C126M | 400 | 7.5 | 20 | 1.5 | 40 | TO220 |
| CF106D | 400 | 3.2 | 0.2 | 1 | 5 | TO220 |
| CF106M | 600 | 3.2 | 0.2 | 1 | 5 | TO220 |
| CP106D | 400 | 1.25 | 0.2 | 1 | 5 | TO92t |
| CP106M | 600 | 1.25 | 0.2 | 1 | 5 | TO92t |
| 2N1599 | 400 | 1 | 10 | 3 | - | TO5 |
| 2N6399 | 800 | 7.5 | 30 | 1.5 | 40 | TO220 |



Fig.5.17 Base views for a range of thyristors

Base views for a range of thyristors (including those above) are provided in Figure 5.17.

## Triacs and Diacs

Triacs and diacs are a developments of the basic s.c.r. In fact a diac could be regarded as a step backwards, as it is a simple two terminal device. It is effectively a thyristor that has no gate terminal. Although this may seem a bit useless, with no way of triggering the device, this is not the case. If the forward voltage across the anode and cathode of a thyristor is made large enough, the device will break down and it will effectively trigger itself into conduction. A diac is designed to have quite a low breakdown voltage of typically about 30 to 35 volts (but much lower on some recent types). The main use of a diac is to trigger a thyristor or triac when the gate voltage reaches a certain level. This method is much used in lamp dimmers and other a.c. power control applications. Note that a diac is bidirectional, and will operate with an input voltage of either polarity.

A triac has similar characteristics to a thyristor, but it is fully bidirectional. It can be triggered by a gate signal of either polarity, and can control a signal of either polarity. A triac can therefore be used to control an a.c. load. This is in fact possible with a thyristor, but only with the aid of a rectifier circuit to ensure that it is fed with signals of the appropriate polarity.

This table provides basic data for some common triacs.

| Device | $V_{r}(V)$ | $l_{f}(A)$ | $I_{g}(m A)$ | $V_{g}(V)$ | $I_{h m}(m A)$ | Case |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| C206D | 400 | 3 | 5 | 2 | 30 | TO220 |
| C226D | 400 | 8 | 50 | 2.5 | 60 | TO220 |
| C236D | 400 | 12 | 50 | 2.5 | 50 | TO220 |
| C246D | 400 | 16 | 50 | 2.5 | 50 | TO220 |
| CF206D | 400 | 4 | 5 | 2 | 15 | TO220 |
| CF206M | 600 | 4 | 5 | 2 | 15 | TO220 |
| CF225D | 400 | 8 | 20 | 2 | 20 | TO220 |
| CF225M | 600 | 8 | 20 | 2 | 20 | TO220 |
| CP206D | 400 | 1.5 | 8 | 2.5 | 30 | TO92r |
| CP206M | 600 | 1.5 | 8 | 2.5 | 30 | TO92r |
| SC146D | 400 | 10 | 50 | 2.5 | 75 | TO220 |
| 2N6073 | 400 | 4 | 30 | 2.5 | 70 | TO220 |

Figure 5.18 shows base views for a range of triacs.


T092r



TO220


T03/T066

Fig.5.18 Base views for a range of triacs

## Chapter 6

## MISCELLANEOUS DATA

This chapter provides a large amount of miscellaneous data, including radio, MIDI, and computer related data.

## Short Wave Bands

There are thirteen short wave broadcast bands. These are listed below, together with the frequency span of each one.

## Short Wave Broadcast Bands

| Band | Frequency Range |
| :--- | :--- |
| 120 Metres | 2.3 MHz to 2.498 MHz |
| 90 Metres | 3.2 MHz to 3.4 MHz |
| 75 Metres | 3.95 MHz to 4.0 MHz |
| 60 Metres | 4.75 MHz to 5.06 MHz |
| 49 Metres | 5.95 MHz to 6.2 MHz |
| 41 Metres | 7.1 MHz to 7.3 MHz |
| 31 Metres | 9.5 MHz to 9.9 MHz |
| 25 Metres | 11.65 MHz to 12.05 MHz |
| 22 Metres | $13 . \mathrm{MHz}$ to 13.8 MHz |
| 19 Metres | 15.1 MHz to 15.6 MHz |
| 16 Metres | 17.55 MHz to 17.9 MHz |
| 13 Metres | 21.45 MHz to 21.85 MHz |
| 11 Metres | 25.67 MHz to 26.1 MHz |

There are currently nine short wave amateur bands, and these plus their frequency spans are listed below. Incidentally, the 160 metre band is popularly known as "topband", but the other bands seem to lack any nickname of this type.

Short Wave Amateur Band

| Metres | 1.8 MHz to $1.85 \mathrm{MHz}(2.0 \mathrm{MHz})$ |
| :--- | :--- |
| 80 Metres | 3.5 MHz to $3.8 \mathrm{MHz}(4.0 \mathrm{MHz})$ |
| 40 Metres | 7.0 MHz to $7.1 \mathrm{MHz}(7.3 \mathrm{MHz})$ |
| $29.5(30)$ Metre | 10.1 MHz to 10.15 MHz |


| 20 Metres | 14.0 MHz to 14.35 MHz |
| :--- | :--- |
| 16.5 (17) Metres | 18.068 MHz to 18.168 MHz |
| 15 Metres | 21.0 MHz to 21.45 MHz |
| 12 Metres | 24.89 MHz to 24.99 MHz |
| 10 Metres | 28 MHz to 29.7 MHz |

In some countries, including the U.K., 160 metres has an upper limit of 2.0 MHz , whereas in other countries it ends at 1.85 MHz . Similarly, in some countries the 80 metre band extends right up to 4.0 MHz , and the 40 metre band extends to 7.3MHz. Note that in the U.K. these bands end at the 3.8 MHz and 7.1 MHz limits. Some of these bands are not exclusively for amateur use, and other stations (such as maritime types) will be found within these bands. It is mainly the low frequency bands where these other transmissions are to be found.

There are three V.H.F. amateur bands, as detailed here.

| Band | Frequency Range |
| :--- | :--- |
| 6 Metres | 50 to 52 MHz |
| 4 Metres | 70.025 to 70.5 MHz |
| 2 Metres | 144 to 146 MHz |

These are the band limits for the U.H.F. amateur bands.

| Band | Frequency Range |
| :--- | :--- |
| 70 Centimetres | 432 to 440 MHz |
| 23 Centimetres | 1240 to 1325 MHz |
| 13 Centimetres | 2300 to 2450 MHz |

## CB Frequency Allocations

The 27 MHz citizens band has 40 channels covering frequencies from 27.6025 MHz to 27.99125 MHz ( 10 kHz channel spacing). The maximum transmitter power is 4 watts, with a maximum e.r.p. of 2 watts. The only form of modulation permitted is f.m., and the maximum deviation is $\pm 2.5 \mathrm{kHz}$. The aerial is a base loaded rod or wire no longer than 1.5 metres long, and the transmitter output power must be reduced by at least 10 dB if the aerial is more than 7 metres above ground level.

| Channel | Frequency (MHz) |
| :--- | ---: |
| 1 | 27.60125 |
| 2 | 27.61125 |
| 3 | 27.62125 |
| 4 | 27.63125 |
| 5 | 27.64125 |
| 6 | 27.65125 |
| 7 | 27.66125 |
| 8 | 27.67125 |
| 9 | 27.68125 |
| 10 | 27.69125 |
| 11 | 27.70125 |
| 12 | 27.71125 |
| 13 | 27.72125 |
| 14 | 27.73125 |
| 15 | 27.74125 |
| 16 | 27.75125 |
| 17 | 27.76125 |
| 18 | 27.77125 |
| 19 | 27.78125 |
| 20 | 27.79125 |
| 21 | 27.80125 |
| 22 | 27.81125 |
| 23 | 27.82125 |
| 24 | 27.83125 |
| 25 | 27.84125 |
| 26 | 27.85125 |
| 27 | 27.86125 |
| 28 | 27.87125 |
| 29 | 27.88125 |
| 30 | 27.89125 |
| 31 | 27.90125 |
| 32 | 27.91125 |
| 33 | 27.92125 |
| 34 | 27.93125 |
| 35 | 27.94125 |
| 36 | 27.95125 |
| 37 | 27.96125 |
| 38 | 27.97125 |
| 39 | 27.98125 |
| 40 |  |
|  |  |
|  |  |
|  |  |

The 934 MHz citizens band has 20 channels with 50 kHz channel spacing, but this may eventually be reduced to 25 kHz . The frequency range covered is from 934.025 MHz to 934.975 MHz . The maximum transmitter output power is 8 watts, and the maximum e.r.p. is 3 watts if the aerial is built-in, or 20 watts if it is not. The aerial may have up to four elements, but none must be more than 170 millimetres long. If the aerial is mounted more than 10 metres above ground level the transmitter output power must be reduced by at least 10 dB . Only f.m. is permitted, and the maximum deviation is $\pm 5 \mathrm{kHz}$.

| Channel | Frequency $(\mathrm{MHz})$ |
| :--- | :--- |
| 1 | 934.025 |
| 2 | 934.075 |
| 3 | 934.125 |
| 4 | 934.175 |
| 5 | 934.225 |
| 6 | 934.275 |
| 7 | 934.325 |
| 8 | 934.375 |
| 9 | 934.425 |
| 10 | 934.475 |
| 11 | 934.525 |
| 12 | 934.575 |
| 13 | 934.625 |
| 14 | 934.675 |
| 15 | 934.725 |
| 16 | 934.775 |
| 17 | 934.825 |
| 18 | 934.875 |
| 19 | 934.925 |
| 20 | 934.975 |

Frequency - Wavelength Conversion

| MHz | Metres |
| :---: | :---: |
| 1 | 300 |
| 1.1 | 272.7 |
| 1.2 | 250 |
| 1.3 | 230.8 |
| 1.4 | 214.3 |
| 1.5 | 200 |
| 1.6 | 187.5 |
| 1.7 | 176.5 |
| 1.8 | 166.6 |
| 1.9 | 157.9 |
| 2.0 | 150 |
| 2.5 | 120 |
| 3 | 100 |
| 3.5 | 86 |
| 4 | 75 |
| 4.5 | 66.6 |
| 5 | 60 |
| 5.5 | 54.5 |
| 6 | 50 |
| 6.5 | 46.2 |
| 7 | 42.9 |
| 7.5 | 40 |
| 8 | 37.5 |
| 8.5 | 35.3 |
| 9 | 33.3 |
| 9.5 | 31.6 |
| 10 | 30 |
| 11 | 27.27 |
| 12 | 25 |
| 13 | 23.08 |
| 14 | 21.43 |
| 15 | 20 |
| 16 | 18.75 |
| 17 | 17.65 |
| 18 | 16.88 |
| 19 | 15.79 |
| 20 | 15 |


| 21 | 14.29 |
| :--- | :--- |
| 22 | 13.64 |
| 23 | 13.04 |
| 24 | 12.5 |
| 25 | 12 |
| 26 | 11.54 |
| 27 | 11.11 |
| 28 | 10.71 |
| 29 | 10.34 |
| 30 | 10 |

Frequencies outside the range of this table can be accommodated without too much difficulty. For example, a frequency of 100 Mz is ten times higher than 10 MHz , and it will therefore have a wavelength only one tenth as long. The wavelength at 10 MHz is 30 metres, and the wavelength at 100 MHz will therefore be 3 metres. Frequency to wavelength conversion is quite easy anyway, and to convert from megahertz to metres simply divide 300 by the frequency (e.g. 300 divided by 4 MHz equals 75 metres). To convert kilohertz to metres divide 300,000 by the frequency (e.g. 300,000 divided by 100 kHz equals 3000 metres).

Wavelength to frequency conversion is equally straightforward. Dividing 300 by the wavelength in metres gives an answer in megahertz, or dividing 300,000 by the wavelength in metres gives an answer in kilohertz. For instance, 150 metres is equivalent to 2 MHz ( 300 divided by 150 equals 2 MHz ), or $2000 \mathrm{kHz}(300,000$ divided by $150=2000 \mathrm{kHz}$ ).

## Amateur Abbreviations

Amateur abbreviations were originally used to enable messages in Morse code to be sent in a more compact form. They are still used for Morse code communications, but many (XYL for example) are now used much more generally by the radio amateur fraternity. This list gives details of many of the more common amateur abbreviations.

| Code | Meaning |
| :--- | :--- |
| ABT | About |
| AGN | Again |


| ALC | Automatic level control |
| :--- | :--- |
| AM | Amplitude modulation |
| ANI | Any |
| ANT | Antenna |
| ARS | Amateur radio society |
| BC | Broadcast |
| BCI | Broadcast interference |
| BCNU | Be seeing you |
| BFO | Beat frequency oscillator |
| BK | Break |
| BT | Battery |
| BW | Bandwidth |
| B4 | Before |
| CANS | Headphones |
| CCT | Circuit |
| CK | Check |
| CLG | Calling |
| CO | Crystal oscillator |
| CQ | Request for someone to respond to a transmission |
| CONDX | Conditions |
| CUAGN | See you again |
| CUL | See you later |
| CUD | Could |
| CW | Continuous wave (Morse code) |
| DE | From |
| DET | Detector (demodulator) |
| DF | Direction finder |
| DSB | Double sideband |
| DX | Long distance or otherwise difficult communication |
| ERE | Here |
| ES | And |
| FB | Fine business |
| FD | Field day |
| FM | Frequency modulation |
| FR | For |
| FONE | Telephony (voice communication) |
| GA | Go ahead or good afternoon |
| GB | Goodbye |
| GE | Good evening |
| GG | Going |
|  |  |
| AK |  |


| GLD | Glad |
| :---: | :---: |
| GM | Good morning |
| GND | Ground (earth) |
| GUD | Good |
| HI | Laughter, high spirits |
| HPE | Hope |
| HR | Hear hear |
| HRD | Heard |
| HV | Have |
| HW | How |
| ID | Identification |
| IF | Intermediate frequency |
| KHZ | Kilohertz |
| LID | Bad operator |
| MNI | Many |
| MS | Meteor scatter |
| MSG | Message |
| MHZ | Megahertz |
| ND | Nothing doing |
| NW | Now |
| OB | Old boy |
| OG | Old girl |
| OM | Old man |
| OP | Operator |
| OT | Old timer |
| PA | Power Amplifier |
| PSE | Please |
| R | Everything received correctly |
| RPT | Report |
| RX | Receiver |
| SA | Say |
| SED | Said |
| SIGS | Signals |
| SRI | Sorry |
| SSB | Single sideband |
| SUM | Some |
| SWL | Short wave listener |
| TKS | Thanks |
| TMW | Tomorrow |
| TNX | Thanks |


| TT | That |
| :--- | :--- |
| TU | Thank you |
| TVI | Television interference |
| TX | Transmitter |
| U | You |
| UR | You are |
| VFO | Variable frequency oscillator |
| VXO | Variable crystal oscillator |
| VY | Very |
| WID | With |
| WKD | Worked |
| WL | Will |
| WUD | Would |
| WX | Weather |
| XYL | Wife (Ex young lady) |
| YF | Wife |
| YL | Young lady |
| 73 | Best wishes |
| $\mathbf{8 8}$ | Love and kisses |

## Q Codes

The Q codes are not exclusively used by radio amateurs, and are used generally in the field of radio communications. They were originally designed to streamline Morse code communications, but are used more generally these days. They are used to ask questions, as in the list provided here, but can also be used as an answer or an instruction. Some have become general terms. For example, QRP can mean "shall I reduce power", and it is also used by radio amateurs as a general term for lowpower operation.

Code Meaning
QRA What is the name of your station?
QRB What is your approximate distance from my station?
QRH Does my frequency fluctuate?
QRI Is my note good?
QRK Are you receiving well? (also used by amateurs as an abbreviation for money!)
QRL Are you busy?

QRM Is my signal contaminated with man-made interference?
QRN Is my signal subject to atmospheric interference?
QRO Do you wish me to increase power? (also used as an abbreviation for high power operation)
QRP Do you wish me to reduce power? (also used as an abbreviation for low power operation)
QRQ Shall I send faster?
QRS Shall I send slower?
QRT Shall I stop sending? (also used to signify that a station is closing down)
QRV Are you ready?
QRX Shall I wait?
QRZ Who is calling me?
QSB Does my signal vary in strength? (also used as an abbreviation for signal fading)
QSL Did you copy that? (also the name of a card sent as confirmation of a contact, or to acknowledge a reception report)
QSO A contact with another station
QSP Will you relay this message to ......?
QSV Shall I send a series of Vs?
QSZ Shall I send each group of words twice?
QSY Shall I change frequency?
QTH What is your location? (also used as a general abbreviation for the address from which a radio amateur operates his or her station)

## SINPO

SINPO is a form of brief reception report, and it rates five aspects of the signal on a scale of one to five. These five aspects are signal strength ( S ), interference (I), noise ( N ), propagation disturbance $(\mathrm{P})$, and overall readability ( O ). Rating details for all five of these are listed here.

Signal Strength

| 1 | Only just audible |
| :--- | :--- |
| 2 | Poor |
| 3 | Fair |


| 4 | Good |
| :--- | :--- |
| 5 | Excellent |

## Interference

1
2
3
4
5

Extremely bad
Severe
Moderate
Slight
None
Noise

| 1 | Extremely bad |
| :--- | :--- |
| 2 | Severe |
| 3 | Moderate |
| 4 | Slight |
| 5 | None |

Propagation Disturbance

Overall Rating
1

2
3
4
5

Unreadable
Poor
Fair
Good
Excellent

## Baudot Codes

Baudot coding is the standard method of sending data via RTTY (radio teletype) links. This method of coding is used by both amateur and commercial RTTY stations. Amateur stations mainly use transmission rate of 45 baud ( 45.45 to be precise), or occasionally 50 baud. The most common frequency shift for amateur RTTY is 170 hertz. Baudot codes are five bit types, and are sent with one start bit plus one or one and a half stop
bits. Five bit coding gives 32 different codes, which is not enough for a full alpha-numeric character set plus punctuation marks. This shortcoming is overcome in two ways. Firstly, only upper case characters are supported. Secondly, a shift system is used, with one character set containing letters and common punctuation marks, and the other containing numbers and further punctuation marks. This table provides details of all the Baudot codes.

| DECIMAL | HEX | LETTERS | FIGURES |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 0 | 00 | Not used | Not used |
| 1 | 01 | E |  |
| 2 | 02 | Line feed | Line feed |
| 3 | 03 | A | - |
| 4 | 04 | Space | Space |
| 5 | 05 | S | Bell or ${ }^{\text {c }}$ |
| 6 | 06 | I | 8 |
| 7 | 07 | U | 7 |
| 8 | 08 | Return | Return |
| 9 | 09 | D | \$ |
| 10 | 0A | R | 4 |
| 11 | 0B | J | ' or bell |
| 12 | ${ }^{0} \mathrm{C}$ | N |  |
| 13 | OD | F | ! or \% |
| 14 | 0E | C | : |
| 15 | OF | K | ( |
| 16 | 10 | T | 5 |
| 17 | 11 | Z | " |
| 18 | 12 | L | ) |
| 19 | 13 | W | 2 |
| 20 | 14 | H | ú or \# |
| 21 | 15 | Y | 6 |
| 22 | 16 | P | 0 |
| 23 | 17 | Q | , |
| 24 | 18 | 0 | 9 |
| 25 | 19 | B | ? |
| 26 | 1 A | G | \& or + |
| 27 | 1 B | Figures | Figures |
| 28 | 1 C | M |  |
| 29 | 1 D | X | 1 |


| 30 | 1 E | V | ~ |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 31 | 1 F | Letters | Letters |

("Letters" and "Figures" are the two shift characters)
Morse Code
A dot is equal to one unit of time, and a dash lasts three units. The space between dots/dashes forming a character is one unit of time. The space between characters lasts three units of time, and the space between two words equals five units of time.

| A | - - |
| :---: | :---: |
| B | -... |
| C | -•-• |
| D | -•• |
| E | - |
| F | -•- |
| G | - - |
| H | - |
| I | $\cdots$ |
| J | ---- |
| K | - |
| L | --•• |
| M | -- |
| N | - - |
| 0 | - - |
| P | - |
| Q | --•- |
| R | --• |
| S | . . |
| T | - |
| U | -•- |
| V | . . . - |
| W | --- |
| X | - |
| Y | -•-- |
| Z | --•• |
| 1 | - |
| 2 | -•-- |
| 3 | -••-- |


| 4 | ． |
| :---: | :---: |
| 5 | －•••• |
| 6 | －••• |
| 7 | －－••• |
| 8 | －•• |
| 9 | ーーーー・ |
| 0 | － |
| Apostrophe | －ーーーー・ |
| Bracket | －・ーー・ー |
| Break sign | －••－ |
| Comma | －－・ーー |
| End of message | －－•－• |
| End of work | －••－•－ |
| Error |  |
| Full stop | －－•－•－ |
| Hyphen | －．．．－ |
| Inverted commas | － |
| Question mark | －・ー－•• |
| Understood | －••• |
| Wait | － |

## ASCII Codes

Virtually all modern computers use a character set that is close－ ly based on the ASCII（American Standard Code for Information Interchange）set．These are seven bit codes，giving a maximum of 128 different characters．Many computers use the eighth bit for additional，non－standard codes（i．e．code num－ bers from 128 to 255 are often used for non－standard graphics characters，etc．）．This table provides details of the standard ASCII codes．

| DECIMAL | HEX | BINARY | CHARACTER |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 0 | 00 | 0000000 | NULL |
| 1 | 01 | 0001 | SOH |
| 2 | 02 | 0010 | STX |
| 3 | 03 | 0011 | ETX |
| 4 | 04 | 0100 | EOT |
| 5 | 05 | 0101 | ENQ |
| 6 | 06 | 0110 | ACK |


| 7 | 07 | 0111 | BEL |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 8 | 08 | 1000 | BS |
| 9 | 09 | 1001 | HT |
| 10 | 0A | 1010 | LF |
| 11 | 0B | 1011 | VT |
| 12 | OC | 1100 | FF |
| 13 | OD | 1101 | CR |
| 14 | 0E | 1110 | SO |
| 15 | OF | 1111 | SI |
| 16 | 10 | 0010000 | DLE |
| 17 | 11 | 0001 | DCl |
| 18 | 12 | 0010 | DC2 |
| 19 | 13 | 0011 | DC3 |
| 20 | 14 | 0100 | DC4 |
| 21 | 15 | 0101 | NAK |
| 22 | 16 | 0110 | SYN |
| 23 | 17 | 0111 | ETB |
| 24 | 18 | 1000 | CAN |
| 25 | 19 | 1001 | EM |
| 26 | 1 A | 1010 | SUB |
| 27 | 1B | 1011 | ESC |
| 28 | 1 C | 1100 | FS |
| 29 | 1D | 1101 | GS |
| 30 | 1E | 1110 | RS |
| 31 | IF | 1111 | US |
| 32 | 20 | 0100000 | [SPACE] |
| 33 | 21 | 0001 | 1 |
| 34 | 22 | 0010 | n |
| 35 | 23 | 0011 | [HASH] |
| 36 | 24 | 0100 | \$ |
| 37 | 25 | 0101 | \% |
| 38 | 26 | 0110 |  |
| 39 | 27 | 0111 | , |
| 40 | 28 | 1000 | ( |
| 41 | 29 | 1001 | ) |
| 42 | 2A | 1010 | * |
| 43 | 2B | 1011 | + |
| 44 | 2C | 1100 |  |
| 45 | 2D | 1101 | - |
| 46 | 2E | 1110 | . |


| 47 | 2F | 1111 | 1 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 48 | 30 | 0110000 | 0 |
| 49 | 31 | 0001 | 1 |
| 50 | 32 | 0010 | 2 |
| 51 | 33 | 0011 | 3 |
| 52 | 34 | 0100 | 4 |
| 53 | 35 | 0101 | 5 |
| 54 | 36 | 0110 | 6 |
| 55 | 37 | 0111 | 7 |
| 56 | 38 | 1000 | 8 |
| 57 | 39 | 1001 | 9 |
| 58 | 3A | 1010 | : |
| 59 | 3B | 1011 | ; |
| 60 | 3C | 1100 | $<$ |
| 61 | 3D | 1101 | $=$ |
| 62 | 3E | 1110 | > |
| 63 | 3F | 1111 | ? |
| 64 | 40 | 1000000 | @ |
| 65 | 41 | 0001 | A |
| 66 | 42 | 0010 | B |
| 67 | 43 | 0011 | C |
| 68 | 44 | 0100 | D |
| 69 | 45 | 0101 | E |
| 70 | 46 | 0110 | F |
| 71 | 47 | 0111 | G |
| 72 | 48 | 1000 | H |
| 73 | 49 | 1001 | I |
| 74 | 4A | 1010 | J |
| 75 | 4B | 1011 | K |
| 76 | 4C | 1100 | L |
| 77 | 4D | 1101 | M |
| 78 | 4E | 1110 | N |
| 79 | 4F | 1111 | 0 |
| 80 | 50 | 1010000 | P |
| 81 | 51 | 0001 | Q |
| 82 | 52 | 0010 | R |
| 83 | 53 | 0011 | S |
| 84 | 54 | 0100 | T |
| 85 | 55 | 0101 | U |
| 86 | 56 | 0110 | V |


| 87 | 57 | 0111 | W |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 88 | 58 | 1000 | X |
| 89 | 59 | 1001 | Y |
| 90 | 5A | 1010 | Z |
| 91 | 5B | 1011 | [ |
| 92 | 5C | 1100 | 1 |
| 93 | 5D | 1101 | ] |
| 94 | 5E | 1110 | $\wedge$ |
| 95 | 5F | 1111 | [L.ARROW] |
| 97 | 60 | 1100000 | - |
| 98 | 61 | 0001 | a |
| 99 | 62 | 0010 | b |
| 100 | 63 | 0011 | c |
| 101 | 64 | 0100 | d |
| 102 | 65 | 0101 |  |
| 103 | 66 | 0110 | f |
| 104 | 67 | 0111 | g |
| 105 | 68 | 1000 | h |
| 106 | 69 | 1001 | i |
| 107 | 6A | 1010 | j |
| 108 | 6B | 1011 | k |
| 109 | 6C | 1100 | 1 |
| 110 | 6D | 1101 | m |
| 111 | 6E | 1110 | n |
| 112 | 6F | 1111 | 0 |
| 113 | 70 | 1110000 | p |
| 114 | 71 | 0001 | q |
| 115 | 72 | 0010 |  |
| 116 | 73 | 0011 | $s$ |
| 117 | 74 | 0100 | t |
| 118 | 75 | 0101 | u |
| 119 | 76 | 0110 | $v$ |
| 120 | 77 | 0111 | w |
| 121 | 78 | 1000 | X |
| 122 | 79 | 1001 | y |
| 123 | 7A | 1010 | z |
| 124 | 7B | 1011 | \{ |
| 125 | 7C | 1100 | [double dash] |
| 126 | 7D | 1101 | \} |
| 127 | 7E | 1110 | $\sim$ |

## MIDI Codes

MIDI is an acronym for "musical instruments digital interface". MIDI is a form of serial interface, and it is very similar to the standard RS232C and RS423 computer serial interfaces. MIDI uses a word format of one start bit, eight data bits, one stop bit, and no parity. It is a form of asynchronous serial interface, which means that the timing signals are sent on the same line as the data. In fact the only synchronisation signal is the start bit at the beginning of each byte. This indicates the commencement of a byte of data, and that the voltage on the connecting lead must be tested at regular intervals thereafter until a full byte of data has been received. It does not ensure that the transmitting and sending devices are properly synchronised while each byte of data is sent. This is achieved by sending/receiving data at a standard rate. For MIDI the standard "baud" rate is 31250 baud, or 31.25 kilobaud if you prefer. This simply means that data is transmitted at a rate of 31250 bits per second (assuming a continuous flow of data).

RS232C and RS423 interfaces use different voltages to represent logic 0 and logic 1 levels, but MIDI is different in that it uses a 5 milliamp current loop. In other words, the current is switched on to indicate one logic level, and switched off to represent the other logic state. This is done due to the use of optoisolators at each input, which keep items of equipment in the system electrically isolated from one another. This eliminates the risk of damage occurring when two or more items of equipment are connected together, due to their chassis being at different voltages. It also helps to reduce the risk of "hum" loops being produced when a number of instruments and other equipment are connected together. Finally, it also helps to avoid having electrical noise coupled from a computer into the audio stages of an instrument.

The standard MIDI connector is a 5 way 180 degree DIN type. Figure 6.1 provides connection details for the three different types of MIDI port. A THRU port is a form of output, and it simply provides a replica of the signal received at the IN socket. Note that the shield of the cable is left unconnected at


IN sockets, so that the shield does not bypass the optoisolation.

## MIDI Instructions and Codes

All MIDI instructions have a header byte that consists of two 4 bit sections (or "nibbles" as they are sometimes called). The most significant nibble indicates the nature of the instruction (note on, note off, or whatever). The least significant nibble is the channel number in most messages, but no channel number is required for any form of system message. With system messages the most significant nibble is the system message code, and the least significant nibble defines the precise type of system message (MIDI clock, reset, etc.). In terms of the total decimal value in a header byte, it is just a matter of taking the values of the two nibbles and adding them together. For instance, an instruction nibble of 128 and a channel value of 12 would be sent as a byte having a total value of 140 . With MIDI it is often easier to work with hexadecimal numbers, as each nibble represents one digit of a hexadecimal number.

The most significant bit of header bytes is always set to 1 , but this bit of data bytes is always 0 . It is for this reason that MIDI data bytes only cover a 0 to 127 range, and not the full 0 to 255 span afforded by 8 bit operation. This enables receiving equipment to easily sort out MIDI messages from amongst MIDI data of other messages. This mixing of messages can occur when certain MIDI timing messages are transmitted.

## Note On/Off

The note on nibble is 1001 in binary, which is equivalent to 144 in decimal. From here onwards, values will be provided in binary, followed by the decimal equivalent shown in brackets. The least significant nibble is the channel number, which is from $0000(0)$ to 1111 (15). As MIDI channels are normally numbered from 1 to 16 , this means that the value used in a MIDI channel message to select the desired channel is actually one less than the MIDI channel number. In other words a value of 0 selects channel 1 , a value of 1 selects channel 2 , and so on. The note on message is followed by two data bytes, which are the note number and the velocity value.

Note off messages have 1000 (128) as the most significant nibble, and the channel number as the least significant nibble. The header byte is followed by two data bytes, which are again the note number and velocity value. A note on message having a velocity value of 0 can be used as an alternative form of note off message.

## Key Pressure

Overall key pressure (sometimes called "channel" pressure) has the instruction nibble 1101 (208) and is followed by a single data byte. Polyphonic key pressure has $1010(160)$ as the instruction nibble, and is followed by two data bytes. These are the note value first, and the pressure value second. For both types of message the least significant nibble of the header byte contains the channel number.

## Control Change, Etc.

The control change header byte has 1011 (176) as the most significant nibble in the header byte, while the least significant nibble is the channel number value. The header is followed by two data bytes, which are the control number followed by its new value. Controls from 0 to 31 are paired with controls from 32 to 63 (respectively), and these operate as high resolution continuous controls. Each pair of seven bit numbers are combined to give a single 14 bit value. The lower numbered controller always provides the most significant bits, with the higher numbered control providing the seven least significant bits. In terms of decimal numbers, the range available is from 0 to 16383. Note that it is quite acceptable to change only one or other of the controls in a pair, and a change to one does not necessitate a change to the other.

Control numbers from 64 to 95 are used for switch type controls. Originally only control values of 0 (off) and 127 (on) were valid with these, and other control values were ignored. An amendment to the specification now has values from 0 to 63 as off, and from 64 to 127 as on. Control numbers from 96 to 121 are, as yet, unassigned. These are available for future expansion, and may be assigned specific functions in due course.

The remaining control numbers ( 122 to 127 ) are used for mode changes and similar functions. These have a value of 0 for the control value byte, apart from controls 122 (local on/off) and 126 (mono on). Local control is a standard on/off switch type control, and is from 64 to 127 to activate the keyboard (or whatever), and 0 to 63 to switch it off. When mono mode is switched on, the control value selects the number of voices to be set to mono mode (a value of 0 sets all the instrument's voices to mono mode). The MIDI specification only calls for mono mode channels to be contiguous, but some instruments have special modes which allow them to be assigned to any desired channels.

## Pitch Wheel

The pitch wheel header byte has 1110 (224) as its most significant nibble, and the channel number value as the least significant nibble. Two data bytes are used, and the two seven bit values these contain are combined to give a 14 bit pitch wheel value. The least significant byte is the one sent first. A value of 10000000000000 (8192) represents zero pitch change. If less than the full 14 bit resolution is implemented some of the least significant bits are ignored by a receiving device, and always set at zero by a transmitting device.

## Programme Change

The programme change code nibble is 1100 (192). The least significant nibble of the header byte is the channel number value. The header is followed by a single data byte, which is the number of the new programme for that channel. The value in the data byte is from 0 to 127 , but some manufacturers number programmes differently. Where this is the case, equipment manuals often have a conversion chart to make things easier.

This table provides a summary of the channel messages for quick reference purposes. The channel mode messages require some further amplification, and this is provided in the next table.

| Header | Function |
| :--- | :--- |
| 1000 (128) | Note Off |
| $1001(144)$ | Note On |

Data<br>Note Value/Velocity Value Note Value/Velocity Value

| $1010(160)$ | Poly Key Pressure | Note Value/Pressure Value |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $1011(176)$ | Control Change | Control Number/Value |
| $1100(192)$ | Programme Change | New Programme Number |
| $1101(208)$ | Overall Pressure | Pressure Value |
| $1110(224)$ | Pitch Wheel | l.s.b./m.s.b. |


| Control No. | Function | Data |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 121 | Reset All Controls | 0 |
| 122 | Local Control | $0=$ off, $127=$ on |
| 123 | All Notes Off | 0 |
| 124 | Omni Mode Off | 0 |
| 125 | Omni Mode On | 0 |
| 126 | Mono Mode On | Number Of Channels <br>  |
|  |  | To All Channels Set |
| 127 | Poly Mode On Mode) | 0 |

## System Messages

These all have 1111 as the most significant nibble in the header byte. No channel numbers are used, as these messages are sent to the whole system. This leaves the least significant nibble free to indicate the type of system message. The next table gives a full list of these messages, but note that some of the sixteen available codes are as yet undefined. Many of them do not require data bytes, and are just single byte messages.

| Nibble Code | Function |
| :--- | :--- |
| $0000(0)$ | System Exclusive |
| $0001(1)$ | MTC Quarter Frame |
| $0010(2)$ | Song Position Pointer |
| $0011(3)$ | Song Select |
| $0100(4)$ | Undefined |
| $0101(5)$ | Undefined |
| $0110(6)$ | Tune Request |
| $0111(7)$ | End System Exclusive |
| $1000(8)$ | Clock Signal |
| $1001(9)$ | Undefined |
| $1010(10)$ | Start |
| $1011(11)$ | Continue |
| $1100(12)$ | Stop |

Data
ID/As Required
Frame ID and Value l.s.b./m.s.b.

Song Number

None
None
None

None
None
None

The values shown in brackets are the decimal equivalents for the binary nibbles. These must be boosted by 240 to give the total decimal value for each header byte (e.g. the value sent for a clock signal is $240+8=248$ ). The system exclusive message is followed by a data byte which gives the manufacturer's identification code, and then as many data bytes as required follow on from this. The "end system exclusive" message marks the end of a system exclusive message. The next table provides a partial list of manufacturer's identification numbers. The sample dump standard is a "system exclusive common" message, which can be used by any MIDI equipment producer. There are now so many ID numbers that there are not enough single byte codes to accommodate them all. Consequently, some ID numbers are now three bytes long.

| Manufacturer | Number (decimal) |
| :--- | :--- |
| SC1 | 1 |
| Big Briar | 2 |
| Octave | 3 |
| Moog | 4 |
| Passport Designs | 5 |
| Lexicon | 6 |
| Ensonique | 15 |
| Oberheim | 16 |
| Apple Computer | 17 |
| Emu Systems | 24 |
| Eventide | 28 |
| Clarity | 31 |
| Passac | 32 |
| SIEL | 33 |
| PPG | 41 |
| JEN | 42 |
| Elka | 47 |
| Dynacord | 48 |
| Soundcraft Electronics | 57 |

Kawai 64
Roland ..... 65
Korg ..... 66
Yamaha ..... 67
Casio ..... 68
Akai ..... 71
Sony ..... 76
TEAC ..... 78
Matsushita Electric ..... 80
Fostex ..... 81
Sample Dump Standard ..... 126
Alesis ..... 0014
Opcode ..... 0022
Orban ..... 0033
Musonix ..... 00100

## General MIDI

General MIDI system, level 1 (better known as just "General MIDI" or "GM"), is a specification for a MIDI system that can be used to play standard sequencer files, giving fully predictable results. It includes a full set of sound assignments for program numbers. This enables the correct sound for each channel to be selected using a series of program change messages at the beginning of each sequence. Channel 10 is used exclusively for non-melodic percussion sounds (i.e. percussion sounds of fixed pitch), and has a separate set of sound assignments. This is a full list of the channel 10 assignments. It is followed by details of the group and individual assignments for the other 15 channels.

| Program No. | Percussion Sound |
| :--- | :--- |
| 35 | Acoustic Bass Drum |
| 36 | Bass Drum 1 |
| 37 | Side Stick |
| 38 | Acoustic Snare |
| 39 | Hand Clap |
| 40 | Electric Snare |
| 41 | Low Floor Tom |
| 42 | Closed Hi-Hat |
| 43 | High Floor Tom |

Pedal Hi-Hat
Low Tom
Open Hi-Hat
Low Mid Tom
High Mid Tom
Crash Cymbal 1
High Tom
Ride Cymbal 1
Chinese Cymbal
Ride Bell
Tambourine
Splash Cymbal
Cowbell
Crash Cymbal 2
Vibraslap
Ride Cymbal 2
High Bongo
Low Bongo
Mute Hi Conga
Open Hi Conga
Low Conga
High Timbale
Low Timbale
High Agogo
Low Agogo 2
Cabasa
Maracas
Short Whistle
Long Whistle
Short Guiro
Long Guiro
Claves
High Woodblock
Low Woodblock
Mute Cuica
Open Cuica
Mute Triangle
Open Triangle

General MIDI Sound Assignment Groups (not channel 10)

| Program No. | Group |
| :--- | :--- |
| $1-8$ | Piano |
| $9-16$ | Chromatic Percussion |
| $17-24$ | Organ |
| $25-32$ | Guitar |
| $33-40$ | Bass |
| $41-48$ | Strings |
| $49-56$ | Ensemble |
| $57-64$ | Brass |
| $65-72$ | Reed |
| $73-80$ | Pipe |
| $81-88$ | Snnth Lead |
| $89-96$ | Synth Pad |
| $97-104$ | Synth Effects |
| $105-112$ | Ethnic |
| $113-120$ | Percussive |
| $121-128$ | Sound Effects |

Melodic Instrument Sound Assignments

| Program No. | Instrument <br> Grand Piano <br> 1 |
| :--- | :--- |
| 2 | Bright Acoustic Piano |
| 3 | Electric Grand Piano |
| 4 | Honky-Tonk Piano |
| 5 | Electric Piano 1 |
| 6 | Electric Piano 2 |
| 7 | Harpsichord |
| 8 | Clavi |
| 9 |  |
| 9 | Celesta |
| 10 | Glockenspiel |
| 11 | Music Box |
| 12 | Vibraphone |
| 13 | Marimba |
| 14 | Xylophone |
| 15 | Tubular Bells |

Drawbar Organ
Percussive Organ
Rock Organ
Church Organ
Reed Organ
Accordion
Harmonica
Tango Accordion
Acoustic Guitar (nylon strings)
Acoustic Guitar (steel strings)
Electric Guitar (jazz)
Electric Guitar (clean)
Electric Guitar (muted)
Overdriven Guitar
Distortion Guitar
Guitar Harmonics

Acoustic Bass
Electric Bass (finger)
Electric Bass (pick)
Fretless Bass
Slap Bass 1
Slap Bass 2
Synth Bass 1
Synth Bass 2
Violin
Viola
Cello
Contrabass
Tremolo Strings
Pizzicato Strings
Orchestral Harp
Timpani
String Ensemble 1
String Ensemble 2

Synth Strings 1
Synth Strings 2
Choir Aahs
Voice Ooohs
Synth Voice
Orchestra Hit
Trumpet
Trombone
Tuba
Muted Trumpet
French Horn
Brass Section
Synth Brass 1
Synth Brass 2
Soprano Sax
Alto Sax
Tenor Sax
Baritone Sax
Oboe
English Horn
Bassoon
Clarinet
Piccolo
Flute
Recorder
Pan Flute
Blown Bottle
Shakuhachi
Whistle
Ocarina
Lead 1 (square)
Lead 2 (sawtooth)
Lead 3 (calliope)
Lead 4 (chiff)
Lead 5 (charang)
Lead 6 (voice)

Lead 7 (fifths)
Lead 8 (bass \& lead)
Pad 1 (new age)
Pad 2 (warm)
Pad 3 (polysynth)
Pad 4 (choir)
Pad 5 (bowed)
Pad 6 (metallic)
Pad 7 (halo)
Pad 8 (sweep)
FX 1 (rain)
FX 2 (soundtrack)
FX 3 (crystal)
FX 4 (atmosphere)
FX 5 (brightness)
FX 6 (goblins)
FX 7 (echoes)
FX 8 (sci-fi)
Sitar
Banjo
Shamisen
Koto
Kalimba
Bagpipe
Fiddle
Shanai
Tinkle Bell
Agogo
Steel Drums
Woodblock
Taiko Drum
Melodic Tom
Synth Drum
Reverse Cymbal
Guitar Fret Noise

## Circuit Symbols

Figures 6.2 to 6.4 show a range of circuit symbols. I would not claim that every circuit symbol is included in these diagrams, but the vast majority of circuit symbols that you will ever encounter are provided here. Note that these diagrams do not include the logic and amplifier circuit symbols that have been covered in previous chapters. Note also, that the circuit symbol for an integrated circuit, other than an amplifier or certain logic types, is simply a rectangle.

When dealing with circuit symbols you should always bear in mind that there are differences in drawing style from one circuit diagram to the next. Another point to keep in mind is that some symbols have changed over the years. Some of the old versions are still much used today. The best example of this is the zig-zag resistor symbol, which is used by many electronics magazines, etc., despite the fact that the box style resistor symbol is the current British standard. The zig-zag version is included in the diagrams, but the variations on this symbol (potentiometer, preset, etc.) are not. These are basically the same as their box style equivalents, but with the zig-zag in place of the box. Apart from the various types of resistor, where appropriate, the diagrams show both the old and new versions of circuit symbols.

You may occasionally encounter circuit diagrams where all two-terminal components are simply represented by small rectangles, like the box style resistor symbol. This method was never generally adopted in the U.K., but plenty of circuits of this type can be found in service manuals for equipment manufactured outside the U.K. Circuit diagrams of this type tend to be unpopular with the people who have to use them, because the only way of telling the type of component represented by a particular box is to read the component number beside it ( Cl is


Fig.6.2 A selection of circuit symbols


Fig.6.3 A further selection of circuit symbols

a capacitor, R 10 is a resistor, L 2 is an inductor, etc.).
There is something less than total agreement on the letters used in component identification numbers. Transistors are usually "TR" in the U.K., but can be "Tr" or "Q". The latter is often to be found on circuit diagrams which originate outside the U.K. This list of component identification letters should be useful for reference purposes.

| Letter(s) | Component |
| :---: | :---: |
| B | Battery |
| BY | Battery |
| C | Capacitor (any fixed value type) |
| CH | Chassis |
| CRT | Cathode ray tube |
| CSR | Thyristor or triac (controlled silicon rectifier) |
| D | Diode (any type, including photodiodes, l.e.d.s, and rectifiers) |
| E | Earth |
| FL | Filter (usually a ceramic, mechanical, or crystal type) |
| FS | Fuse |
| JK | Jack socket |
| IC | Integrated circuit |
| IFT | Intermediate frequency transformer |
| L | Inductor |
| LP | Lamp (neon or filament, but not a l.e.d.) |
| LS | Loudspeaker |
| M | Motor |
| ME | Meter |
| Mic | Microphone |
| PCC | Photo conductive cell (photo-resistor, usually a cadmium sulphide type) |
| PL | Plug (any type) |
| Q | Transistor |
| R | Resistor (fixed value) |
| RL | Relay (coil or contacts) |
| S | Switch |
| SK | Socket (any type, but jack sockets are often given 'JK' identification letters) |


| SW | Switch |
| :--- | :--- |
| T | Transformer (any type including r.f.) <br> Trimmer capacitor (preset variable |
| TC | capacitor) |
| Th | Thermistor |
| TL | Earphone or headphones |
| Tr | Transistor |
| TR | Transistor |
| V | Valve (any type except c.r.t.) |
| VC | Variable capacitor |
| VR | Variable resistor or potentiometer |
| WD | Warning device (horn, bell, buzzer, etc.) |
| X | Crystal |

On bipolar transistor circuit symbols the letters "e", "b", and " c " are sometimes used to respectively indicate the emitter, base, and collector terminals. For field effect transistors the corresponding letters are " s ", " g ", and " d ", indicating the source, gate, and drain terminals respectively.

## Centronics Interface

Most computers and printers are equipped with a Centronics style parallel interface. A parallel interface sends data in complete bytes over eight lines plus an earth line, permitting a very high rate of transfer. In fact rates of 500 k per second or more can be achieved, but the maximum cable length is quite limited. The maximum recommended cable length for a parallel printer connection is just two metres, although somewhat longer cables are usually satisfactory in practice. In addition to the data lines there are various handshake lines which regulate the flow of data from the computer to the printer. A parallel printer interface provides only one-way communication, apart from status information sent from the printer to the computer via the handshake lines. There are numerous earth connections. When a ribbon cable is used, these connect to leads that provide screening between one data line and the next, and between handshake lines.

Figure 6.5 shows the pin numbering for a standard Centronics input (i.e. the port on the printer). This shows the port as viewed from outside the printer. The connector is a 36

way type which seems to be used for little other than printer ports.

| Pin Number | Function |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 1 | strobe | InputOutput |
| 2 | Data 0 | IN |
| 3 | Data 1 | IN |
| 4 | Data 2 | IN |
| 5 | Data 3 | IN |
| 6 | Data 4 | IN |
| 7 | Data 5 | IN |
| 8 | Data 6 | IN |
| 9 | Data 7 | IN |
| 10 | Acknowledge | OUT |
| 11 | Busy | OUT |
| 12 | Paper Empty | OUT |
| 13 | +5V pull-up | OUT |
| 14 | Auto Line Feed | IN |
| 15 | No Connection | - |
| 16 | Ground | - |
| 17 | Chassis | - |
| 18 | No Connection | - |
| 19 to 30 | Ground | - |
| 31 | Init. | IN |
| 32 | Error | OUT |
| 33 | Ground | - |
| 34 | No Connection | - |
| 35 | +5V pull-up | OUT |
| 36 | SLCT | IN |

There is no standard parallel printer connector at the computer end of the system. The most common form of parallel output port is the IBM PC compatible type, which is now to be found on computers other than IBM PCs and compatibles. Figure 6.6 provides details of this port, which uses a 25 way D type socket on the computer.


Fig.6.6 Details of the IBM style printer port

## RS232C Interface

This list is for the full RS232C implementation. The standard connector for an RS232C port is a 25 way D connector, but it can be a male or female type. Figure 6.7 shows the method of pin numbering used for these two types of connector. Figure 6.7(a) shows the pin numbering for a male connector, and Figure 6.7(b) shows the pin numbering for a female type. These show rear views of the connectors (i.e. seen looking onto the pins to which the soldered connections are made).


Fig.6.7 Pin numbering for 25 pin D connectors, (a) male, and (b) female
Pin Number
1
2
3
4
Function
Protective Ground
Transmitted Data
Received Data
Request To Send (RTS)

Input/Output
OUT
IN
OUT

| 5 | Clear To Send (CTS) | IN |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 6 | Data Set Ready (DSR) | IN |
| 7 | Signal Ground | - |
| 8 | Data Carrier Detect (DCD) | IN |
| 9 | Reserved For Data Set Testing | - |
| 10 | Reserved For Data Set Testing | - |
| 11 | Not Used | - |
| 12 | Sec. Rec. Line Sig. Det. | - |
| 13 | Secondary CTS | - |
| 14 | Secondary Transmitted Data | - |
| 15 | Transmission Signal Element |  |
|  | Timing | - |
| 16 | Secondary Received Data | - |
| 17 | Receiver Signal Element Timing | - |
| 18 | Not Used | - |
| 19 | Secondary Request To Send | - |
| 20 | Data Terminal Ready (DTR) | OUT |
| 21 | Signal Quality Detector | - |
| 22 | Ring Indicator | IN |
| 23 | Data Signal Rate Selector | - |
| 24 | Transmit Signal Element Timing | - |
| 25 | Not Used | - |

Note that many serial ports are substantially cut down versions of the full system. The RS232C interface was designed as a general purpose type not intended specifically for computer use, and it has a number of functions that are of little or no value in computing applications. As little as five terminals (ground, data input, data output, and two handshake lines) are sufficient for a basic two way link with handshaking. Computer RS232C ports often use a different type of connector. This is understandable, since the 25 terminals of the standard D connector are unnecessary with perhaps only five or six terminals actually being implemented. On the other hand, it does mean that standard RS232C connecting leads are unusable with these ports (although ready-made serial leads for many non-standard ports are available). Figure 6.8 provides details of the nine pin "AT" style RS232C port used on many PCs. The connector on the computer is a nine way $D$ type plug.


Fig.6.8 Connection details for an AT style serial port

## Parallel R - Series C

The formula for calculating parallel resistance (Figure 6.9(a)) is:

$$
R \text { total }=(R 1 \times R 2) /(R 1+R 2)
$$

For example, suppose that the values of R 1 and R 2 are 10 k and 33 k . This works out at $330 / 43$, which equals 7.674 k . The formula for calculating series capacitance is essentially the same:

$$
\mathrm{C} \text { total }=(\mathrm{C} 1 \times \mathrm{C} 2) /(\mathrm{C} 1+\mathrm{C} 2)
$$

As a simple example, suppose that C 1 and C 2 have values of 4 n 7 and 15 n . This works out at $70.5 / 19.7$, which gives a final answer of 3.579 n .

Calculating parallel capacitance (Figure 6.10(a)) and series resistance (Figure 6.10(b)) is very simple. It is just a matter of adding the values of the two components. For instance, if Cl and C2 have values of 10 n and 68 n , their total capacitance in parallel is 78 n .

(b)


Fig.6.9 $\quad$ (a) Parallel resistors and (b) series capacitors


Fig.6.10 (a) Parallel capacitors and (b) series resistors

## Amplifier Output Power

The output power of an audio amplifier is equal to:

## Power $=($ Output Voltage Squared $) / Z$ Load

For example, if the output voltage of an amplifier is 12 volts r.m.s., and the load impedance is 8 ohms, this gives 144/8, which gives an answer of 18 watts r.m.s. This table shows output powers for a range of output voltages and at three load impedances.

| V RMS | $4 R$ | $8 R$ | $16 R$ |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 1 | 0.25 | 0.125 | 0.0625 |
| 2 | 1 | 0.5 | 0.25 |
| 3 | 2.25 | 1.125 | 0.562 |
| 4 | 4 | 2 | 1 |
| 5 | 6.25 | 3.125 | 1.562 |
| 6 | 9 | 4.5 | 2.25 |
| 7 | 12.25 | 6.125 | 3.062 |
| 8 | 16 | 8 | 4 |
| 9 | 20.25 | 10.125 | 5.062 |
| 10 | 25 | 12.5 | 6.25 |
| 12 | 36 | 18 | 9 |
| 15 | 56.25 | 28.125 | 14.062 |
| 20 | 100 | 50 | 25 |
| 25 | 156.25 | 78.125 | 39.062 |
| 30 | 225 | 112.5 | 56.25 |
| 40 | 400 | 200 | 100 |

## Peak - R.M.S.

For sinewave signals the peak voltage is 1.414 times the r.m.s. level, and the average voltage is 0.901 times the r.m.s. value. This table shows the relationship between the three types.

| R.M.S. | Peak | Average |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 1 | 1.414 | 0.901 |
| 2 | 2.83 | 1.802 |
| 3 | 4.24 | 2.7 |
| 4 | 5.66 | 3.6 |
| 5 | 7.07 | 4.51 |


| 6 | 8.48 | 5.41 |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 7 | 9.90 | 6.31 |
| 8 | 11.3 | 7.21 |
| 9 | 12.7 | 8.11 |
| 10 | 14.1 | 9.01 |

## Decibel Ratios

Decibels are a means of expressing power ratios, but they are also used to express voltage ratios. The scaling is logarithmic, which gives good accuracy with small ratios, but also enables very high ratios to be expressed without resorting to numbers umpteen digits long. This table shows the relationship between a range of decibel values and their power/voltage ratios.

| $d B$ | Power Ratio | Voltage Ratio |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 0 | 1 | 1 |
| 0.5 | 1.122 | 1.059 |
| 1 | 1.259 | 1.122 |
| 1.5 | 1.413 | 1.189 |
| 2 | 1.585 | 1.259 |
| 2.5 | 1.778 | 1.334 |
| 3 | 1.995 | 1.413 |
| 3.5 | 2.239 | 1.496 |
| 4 | 2.512 | 1.585 |
| 4.5 | 2.818 | 1.679 |
| 5 | 3.162 | 1.778 |
| 6 | 3.981 | 1.995 |
| 7 | 5.012 | 2.239 |
| 8 | 6.31 | 2.512 |
| 9 | 7.943 | 2.818 |
| 10 | 10 | 3.162 |
| 11 | 12.59 | 3.548 |
| 12 | 15.85 | 3.981 |
| 13 | 19.95 | 4.467 |
| 14 | 25.12 | 5.012 |
| 15 | 31.62 | 5.623 |
| 16 | 39.81 | 6.31 |
| 17 | 50.12 | 7.079 |
| 18 | 63.1 | 7.943 |
| 19 | 79.43 | 8.913 |


| 20 | 100 | 10 |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 30 | 1,000 | 31.62 |
| 40 | 10,000 | 100 |
| 50 | 100,000 | 316.2 |
| 60 | $1,000,000$ | 1,000 |
| 70 | $10,000,000$ | 3,162 |
| 80 | $100,000,000$ | 10,000 |
| 90 | $1,000,000,000$ | 31,620 |
| 100 | $10,000,000,000$ | 100,000 |

Please note following is a list of other titles that are available in our range of Radio, Electronics and Computer books.

These should be available from all good Booksellers, Radio Component Dealers and Mail Order Companies.

However, should you experience difficulty in obtaining any title in your area, then please write directly to the Publisher enclosing payment to cover the cost of the book plus adequate postage.

If you would like a complete catalogue of our entire range of Radio, Electronics and Computer books, then please send a Stamped Addressed Envelope to:

BERNARD BABANI (publishing) LTD THE GRAMPIANS SHEPHERDS BUSH ROAD<br>LONDON W6 7NF<br>ENGLAND

| 160 | Coil Design and Construction Manual | 82.50 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 227 | Beginners Guide to Building Electronic Projects | 81.95 |
| 8p26 | Renistor Seloction Handbook | 80.60 |
| 8P36 | 50 Circuits Using Germartum SHicon \& Zener Diodes | £1.85 |
| 8 P 37 | 50 Profects Using Relays, SCRs and TPiACa | 82.85 |
| 8 8939 | 50 (FET) Fiold Effect Transistor Projects | $\underline{2.85}$ |
| 8P42 | 50 simple LED Circuits | E1.95 |
| 8p4 | IC 555 Projects | 82.95 |
| 8p4t | Elpetronic Projects for Beginners | E1.95 |
| 8p49 | Populer Electronic Projects | 22.50 |
| BP53 | Prectien Electronics Celculations 8 : Formulee | 33.55 |
| 8p96 | Electronic Security Devices | 22.95 |
| $8 \mathrm{B7} 7$ | Electronic Music Proiect: | 22.95 |
| 8976 | Power Supply Projects | 82.50 |
| 8p7 | Proctical Computer Experiments | ¢1.75 |
| 8 Pros | Popular Electronic Circuits - Book 1 | 22.95 |
| BP4 | Digital IC Projects | ¢1.95 |
| BP0\% | Internationel Transistor Equ'ralents Guide | 43.95 |
| BP87 | 50 Simple LED Circuits - Book 2 | £1.95 |
| 8 Pres | How to Use Op-mmps | 22.95 |
| 8P90 | Audio Proifects | 22.50 |
| 8 Pa 2 | Elsetronics Simplified - Crystal Set Construction | ¢1.75 |
| BP4 | Electronic Profects for Cers and Bomt | f1.55 |
| Bpes | Model Rallway Projects | 22.95 |
| 8pe 7 | IC Projects for Beginners | E1.95 |
| Bp9 | Popular Electronic Circuits - Book 2 | 22.95 |
| $8 \mathrm{P98}$ | Mini-matrix Boend Projocts | E2.50 |
| 8P105 | Aerid Projects | 22.50 |
| $8 \mathrm{BP107}$ | 30 Solderless Eresedboerd Projects - Book 1 | 2.35 |
| 8p110 | How to Got Your Electronic Profects Working | E2.96 |
| 8 P 111 | Audio | t3.85 |
| $8 \mathrm{BP115}$ | The Pre-computer Book | £1.85 |
| BP118 | Practicat Electronic Butlding Blocks - Book 2 | E1.85 |
| 8 BP 121 | How to Design and Make Your Own PCB's | $\underline{2} .50$ |
| PP122 | Audio Amplifier Construction | 22.95 |
| 8P125 | 25 Simple Ameteur Bend Aeriats | 1.95 |
| AP126 | BASIC A PASCAL in Pordind | £1.50 |
| $8 \mathrm{BP130}$ | Micro Intertacing Cirewits - Book 1 | 22.75 |
| 8 P 131 | Micro Interfecing Circuits - Book 2 | 22.75 |
| 8 Bp 132 | 25 Simple SW Broodetst Band Aarials | E1.55 |
| 8P138 | 25 Simple Indoor and Window Aeriats | E1.75 |
| AP137 | BASIC E PORTRAN in Poralled | 11.95 |
| 8P138 | BASNC E FORTH in Peratiel | £1.95 |
| $8 \mathrm{BP14}$ | Further Precticat Electronics Celculations ${ }^{\text {8 }}$ ( Formulee | 84.95 |
| BP145 | 25 Simple Tropical and MW Band Apriats | £1.75 |
| $8 \mathrm{PP146}$ | The Pre-BASIC Book | 62.95 |
| 8 P 147 | An introduction to 6502 Mechine Code | E2.9\% |
| 8P148 | Computer Terminology Explained | E1.95 |
| 8P171 | Easy Add-on Projects for Amstrad CPC 484, 664, 6128 竟 MSX Computers | 22.85 |
| 8p176 | A TV-DXers Handbook (Revised Edition) | $\underline{5.56}$ |
| 8P177 | An Introduction to Computer Communications | 22.95 |
| 8P179 | Electronic Circuits for the Computer Control of Robots | 22.56 |
| 8p182 | MWDI Projects | 22.85 |
| $8 \mathrm{Pr184}$ | An Introduction to 68000 Aseembly Languege | 82.95 |
| 8p187 | A Prectical Reforence Guide to Word Procesting on the Amstrad PCW325s ${ }^{\text {a }}$ PCWe512 | 65.95 |
| $8 \mathrm{P190}$ | More Advanced Electronic Security Projects | 22.95 |
| BP192 | More Advanced Power Supply Projects | E2.95 |
| 8P193 | LOGO for Beginners | 82.95 |
| 8P19\% | BASIC ${ }^{\text {g }}$ LOCO in Perelted | E2.95 |
| BP197 | An Introduction to the Ametred PC's | 55.95 |
| BP190 | An Introduction to Antenna Theory | 22.95 |
| 98930 | A Concise Introduction to GEM | 82.95 |
| BP232 | A Conciee Introduction to MS-DOS | 22.95 |
| $8 \mathrm{Pr233}$ | Electronic Hobbyistas Hendbook | E4.58 |
| 8 Pr 339 | Getting the Most From Your Multimeter | 22.55 |
| 8 P 240 | Remote Control Handbook | E3.55 |
| 8P243 | B8C BASICes on the Amstrad PC's ${ }_{\text {S }}^{\text {I IBM Competibles - Book 1: Languege }}$ | 63.55 |
| 8P244 | BBC BASKCE on the Amttrad PC's \& IBM Compatibles - Book 2: Graphics and Disk Files | E3.95 |
| AP245 | Digital Audio Profects | 22.95 |
| 8 P 246 | Musical Applicetions of the AtariST's | E5.95 |
| PP247 | More Advanced MIDI Projects | 82.95 |
| 8P248 | Test Equipment Construction | 22.96 |
| PP249 | More Advanced Tast Equipmemt Construction | 23.50 |
| 8P250 | Programming in FORTRAN 77 | 84.95 |
| BP251 | Computer Hobbyists Handbook | E5.55 |
| BP254 | From Atorns to Amperes | E3.50 |
| 8p255 | International Radio Stations Guide (Revised 1991/92 Edition) | E5.95 |
| $8 P 256$ | An Introduction to Loudspeskers ${ }^{\text {B }}$ Enclosure Design | 82.95 |
| BP257 | An Introduction to Amatour Radio | E3.50 |
| BP258 | Leerning to Program in C (Revised Edition) | 84.55 |
| BP259 | A Concise Introduction to UNIX | 22.95 |
| BP260 | A Concise Introduction to OS/2 | 22.95 |
| BP261 | A Concise Introduction to Lotus 1-2.3 (Revised Edition) | 63.95 |


| BP282 | A Concite Introduction to Wordpertect (Revised Edition) | 3.85 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| BP264 | A Concite Advanced Ueer's Guide to MS-DOS (Revised Edition) | E3.\%5 |
| BP2*5 | More Advanced Uses of the Muttimeter | 8.85 |
| Bpzes | Electronic Modules and Syeterns for Beginners | E3.95 |
| $8 P 267$ | How to Use Oecidloscopes 8 Other Test Equlpment | 33.50 |
| BP2*9 | An Introduction to Desktop Publishing | 55.85 |
| 8P270 | A Concies introduction to Symphony | E3.5 |
| P8271 | How to Expand, Modernise E Repair PC's E Compatible | C4.\% |
| BP272 | Interfacing PC's and Competithes | E3.95 |
| BP273 | Prectical Electronic Sensors | E4.95 |
| BP274 | A Concte Introduction to SuperCulcs | E3.95 |
| 89275 | Stmple Short Wave Recoiver Conetruction | 83.85 |
| BP276 | Short Wave Superhet Pacetver Construction | 2.85 |
| 8P277 | High Power Audio Ampifier Construction | E3.95 |
| 8p27t | Experimentel Antenma Topics | 83.50 |
| BP279 | A Concise Introduction to Exeel | E3.95 |
| BP200 | Cetting the Most From Your PC's Hard Disk | E3.95 |
| BP281 | An hitroduction to VHF/UHF for Redio Amateurs | E3.50 |
| 3P282 | Understending PC Specifictions | E3.95 |
| BPat3 | A Conctee introduction to Smmertware il | c4.85 |
| 89204 | Programming in Ouicheasic | E4.95 |
| BP20 | A Beginners Guide to Modern Electronic Components | E3.95 |
| BP2 ${ }^{\text {a }}$ | A Reforence Guide to Batic Elactronics Terme | E5.\%5 |
| 8 Br 297 | A Reference Guide to Prectical Elnctronics Terms | E5.95 |
| BP208 | A Conciee introduction to Windowe3.0 | E3.95 |
| BP20 | An Introduction to Amstour Communications Setelite | E3.5 |
| AP291 | A Concise Introduction to Ventura | E3.95 |
| $8 P 292$ | Public Addrests Loudspeater Syeterns | E3.85 |
| BP293 | An Introduction to Redto Wave Propegation | E3.95 |
| $8 \mathrm{Brg4}$ | A Conciee Introduction to Microsoft Works | C4.95 |
| 8P2\% | A Comele Intsoduction to Word for Windows | C4.55 |
| $8 \mathrm{Pre7}$ | Loudspenters for Mursiciens | E3.85 |
| 8p29t | A Conciee Introduction to the Mec Syetem \& Finder | E3.95 |
| 8P299 | Prectical Enectronic Fifters | 14.85 |
| Bpeso | Setting Up An Amatour Redio Station | 83.55 |
| BP301 | Antennes for VHF and UHF | c3.85 |
| 8 Br 02 | A Concies Users Guide to Lotus 1-2-3 Releese 3.1 | E3.85 |
| BP305 | Understending PC Software | 14.95 |
| BP304 | Projects for Redio Ametourt and SWL | E3.95 |
| 8 P 305 | Lemming CAD whth AutoSkitch for Windows | 85.95 |
| BP306 | A Concise Introduction to Ami Pro 3 | f4.55 |
| BP307 | A Comeies Introduction to QuertxPress | ¢4.95 |
| BP308 | A Conciee Introduction to Word 5.1 on the Macintosh | 85.95 |
| BP309 | Prearnplifier and Fifter Circuits | E3.5 |
| Bpz10 | Acourtic Feedbuct - How to Avoid it | E3.95 |
| Bpr311 | An introduction to Scanmers and Scanning | c4.5 |
| 8P312 | An introduction to Microwaves | E3.95 |
| Bpat3 | A Conciee Introduction to Seme | 53.95 |
| BP314 | A Concies hitroduction to Quettro Pro | ¢4.85 |
| BP315 | An introduction to the Electromegnetic Wave | c4.5 |
| Bpat | Practical Exectronic Design Drta | C4.95 |
| Bpal7 | Practied Electronic Timing | E4.85 |
| BP318 | A Conciee Ueer's Guide to MS-DOS 5 | c4.s |
| 8P319 | Mating MS-DOS Work for You | 44.95 |
| BP320 | Electronic Projects for Your PC | E3.96 |
| BP321 | Circuit Source - Book 1 | 14.95 |
| BP922 | Circuit Source - Book 2 | ¢4.95 |
| BP323 | How to Choose a Small Businest Computer System | ¢4.95 |
| 8p324 | The Art of Soldering | E3.95 |
| BP325 | A Concise Users Guide to Windowe3.1 | C4.95 |
| BP326 | The Electronics of Satellite Communications | C4.95 |
| BP327 | MS-DOS One Step at a Time | C4.95 |
| Bpazs | Sege Explained | [5.95 |
| 89329 | Electronic Munsic Learning Projects | C4.95 |
| BP330 | A Concire User's Guide to Lotus 1-2-3 Releese 2.4 | C4.95 |
| 89331 | A Beginmert Guide to M1D | f4.95 |
| BP332 | A Beginners Guide to TTL Digital ICs | C4.85 |
| BP333 | A Beginners Guide to CMOS Digital ths | c4.85 |
| BP394 | Magic Elsctronic Projects | f4.85 |
| BP335 | Operational Amplifier User's Handmook | 55.85 |
| Bp39 | A Concise Ueer's Guide to Lotus 1-2.3 Releese 3.4 | 25.95 |
| P9337 | A Concise Users Guide to Lotus 1-2-3 for Windows | 55.95 |
| EP338 | A Concise Introduction to Word for Windows | E5.95 |
| PP339 | A Conciee Introduction to Wordpertect 5.2 for Windowes | 55.85 |
| AP340 | A Concide introduction to dBase V | 24.85 |
| Sp341 $\mathrm{BPO}$ | A Concise Usery Guide to MS-0OS 6 <br> A Concieter Users Guide to Lotus Improv | $\underline{55.85}$ |


\section*{| Babani Electronics | MK67 $£ 5.95$ |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |}

## Electronic Hobbyists Data Book



 की: 合

 on an गFE5:34AN oper itual amplifier, it if oorlisind within Thfre paters.
The subjects covered include:

- Lommon circuits, and related data including nebplal נnshimind tiable of values).
- Caio e code for resistors. cap hetors, und nitictore
- Pinout dutails for a wide raige of CMOS and TTL वimeets plus basic clata on the various logic famin
- Fincur deitails and basic data for a wide range of operablera amplifuors.
- Oath and baclocit informstion for a wide range of thitiantorn EET [Pown FETs, triacs, trymiors, droden Ho
 ÁSCll Billidet codinas. Clecibe I fatios, etce.
Thi Donn should tell you everything you ate wer imaly io
 whatir io alik sotiotor. Camguruhinteve coatents pitgis



## BP 396

ISBN 0-85934-396-0


[^0]:    $I_{h m}$
    $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{hm}}$ is the maximum holding current. In other words, this is the minimum current that must be kept passing through the device in order to prevent it from switching off. It is not the current required in order to guarantee that the device will switch off (which is likely to be very much lower than the $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{hm}}$ figure).

